

**SOI: 1.1/TAS**

**DOI: 10.15863/TAS**

**ISSN 2308-4944 (print)**

**ISSN 2409-0085 (online)**

**№ 04 (72) 2019**

**Teoretičeskaâ i prikladnaâ nauka**

---

**Theoretical & Applied Science**



---

**Philadelphia, USA**

**Teoretičkaâ i prikladnaâ  
nauka**

---

**Theoretical & Applied  
Science**

**04 (72)**

**2019**

# International Scientific Journal

## Theoretical & Applied Science

Founder: **International Academy of Theoretical & Applied Sciences**

Published since 2013 year. Issued Monthly.

International scientific journal «Theoretical & Applied Science», registered in France, and indexed more than 45 international scientific bases.

Editorial office: <http://T-Science.org> Phone: +777727-606-81

E-mail: [T-Science@mail.ru](mailto:T-Science@mail.ru)

### Editor-in Chief:

**Alexandr Shevtsov**

Hirsch index:

**h Index RISC = 1 (78)**

### Editorial Board:

1	Prof.	Vladimir Kestelman	USA	<b>h Index Scopus = 3 (38)</b>
2	Prof.	Arne Jönsson	Sweden	<b>h Index Scopus = 4 (21)</b>
3	Prof.	Sagat Zhunisbekov	KZ	-
4	Assistant of Prof.	Boselin Prabhu	India	-
5	Lecturer	Denis Chemezov	Russia	<b>h Index RISC = 2 (61)</b>
6	Senior specialist	Elnur Hasanov	Azerbaijan	<b>h Index Scopus = 6 (11)</b>
7	Associate Prof.	Christo Ananth	India	<b>h Index Scopus = - (1)</b>
8	Prof.	Shafa Aliyev	Azerbaijan	<b>h Index Scopus = - (1)</b>
9	Associate Prof.	Ramesh Kumar	India	<b>h Index Scopus = - (2)</b>
10	Associate Prof.	S. Sathish	India	<b>h Index Scopus = 2 (13)</b>
11	Researcher	Rohit Kumar Verma	India	-
12	Prof.	Kerem Shixaliyev	Azerbaijan	-
13	Associate Prof.	Ananeva Elena Pavlovna	Russia	<b>h Index RISC = 1 (19)</b>
14	Associate Prof.	Muhammad Hussein Noure Elahi	Iran	-
15	Assistant of Prof.	Tamar Shiukashvili	Georgia	-
16	Prof.	Said Abdullaevich Salekhov	Russia	-
17	Prof.	Vladimir Timofeevich Prokhorov	Russia	-
18	Researcher	Bobir Ortikmirzayevich Tursunov	Uzbekistan	-
19	Associate Prof.	Victor Aleksandrovich Melent'ev	Russia	-
20	Prof.	Manuchar Shishinashvili	Georgia	-

ISSN 2308-4944



© Collective of Authors

© «Theoretical & Applied Science»

# International Scientific Journal

## Theoretical & Applied Science

---

**Editorial Board:**

**Hirsch index:**

21

Prof. Konstantin Kurpayanidi

Uzbekistan **h Index RISC = 8 (67)**

**International Scientific Journal**  
**Theoretical & Applied Science**

---



ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science, 04 (72), 610.  
Philadelphia, USA



**Impact Factor ICV = 6.630**

**Impact Factor ISI = 0.829**  
based on International Citation Report (ICR)

**The percentage of rejected articles:**



ISSN 2308-4944



## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

SOI: [1.1/TAS](#) DOI: [10.15863/TAS](#)

## International Scientific Journal Theoretical & Applied Science

p-ISSN: 2308-4944 (print) e-ISSN: 2409-0085 (online)

Year: 2019 Issue: 04 Volume: 72

Published: 30.04.2019 <http://T-Science.org>

QR – Issue



QR – Article



**Iskandar Suyunovich Tukhliev**

Professor, Samarqand institute of economics and service

**Abdinabi Nuraliyevich Muhamadiyev**

Assistant of professor, Samarkand branch of Tashkent

University of Information Technology

[nabi8888@bk.ru](mailto:nabi8888@bk.ru)

## SMART-TOURISM EXPERIENCE IN GEO INFORMATION SYSTEMS

**Abstract:** Smart tourism is a new word in the tourist sphere. In this article, the essence, concept, concept and principles of Smart tourism in GIS are described. Besides, the concept card of Smart-tourism direction is developed.

**Key words:** smart, tourism, concept, card, industry

**Language:** English

**Citation:** Tukhliev, I. S., & Muhamadiyev, A. N. (2019). Smart-tourism experience in geo information systems. *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 04 (72), 501-504.

**Soi:** <http://s-o-i.org/1.1/TAS-04-72-63> **Doi:**  <https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2019.04.72.63>

### Introduction

Tourism is one of the most important sectors of the economy. Effective use of available opportunities, this network needs to be further improved, which is the time itself. Uzbekistan is also a convenient place to travel and visit. Because our Motherland has been known throughout the world, and our famous ancestors have enjoyed eternity. The rich cultural heritage left by them is of great interest to the international arena. To further develop the industry, it is essential to improve the infrastructure required. The first is transportation, the second one is logistics, President Islam Karimov emphasized (Bassolas, Lenormand, Tugores, Gonçalves, & Ramasco, 2016; Baxtishodovich, Suyunovich, & Kholiqulov, 2017a, 2017b; Lawson & Roychoudhury, 2016).

### Main part

In fact, in our country new perspectives of tourism are opened and large-scale projects in various directions are being implemented. In recent years, new tourism destinations such as mountaineering, horseback riding, camels, biking, off-road trips, fishing, rafting, hauling, geotourism, educational tourism, medical tourism have become popular.

For the short timeframe, 16 regulatory and legal documents have been adopted aimed at the comprehensive development of Uzbekistan's tourism potential. Based on these documents, the subjects of tourism have significant tax and customs benefits and

other benefits (Bassolas et al., 2016; Razakov Sh & Shakhgunova, 2001; Turner & Freiermuth, 2017).

In order to ensure that the country meets the requirements of the International Organization for Standardization of Tourism Industry, two new state standards have been developed and documented on the requirements of tourist terminology and hotel safety.

Complex measures on the organization of guest houses in the Tashkent region, tourist clusters of Parkent, Parkent and Ahangaran Angren have been developed and implemented in practice.

One of the modern tourism perspectives is the unique natural environment. Uzbekistan is Central Asia's most advanced eco-tourism. Uzbekistan attracts the attention of the rich flora and fauna, unique landscapes, national cuisine and cuisine. Significant work is underway in Uzbekistan for the development of tourism in the Ugam-Chatkal State National Park, the Chatkal State Biosphere Reserve, the Aydar-Arnasay lake system and the Chimgan-Charvak resort and recreation zones (Beck, 2006; International, 2011; Molz, 2005; Zambinova & Bekisheva, 2015).

Development of special programs for tourists from Europe, Asia and other continents, increasing the number of charter flights and railways, developing tourism internationally developed countries, developing domestic tourism, improving tourism facilities, it is necessary to improve quality.

## Impact Factor:

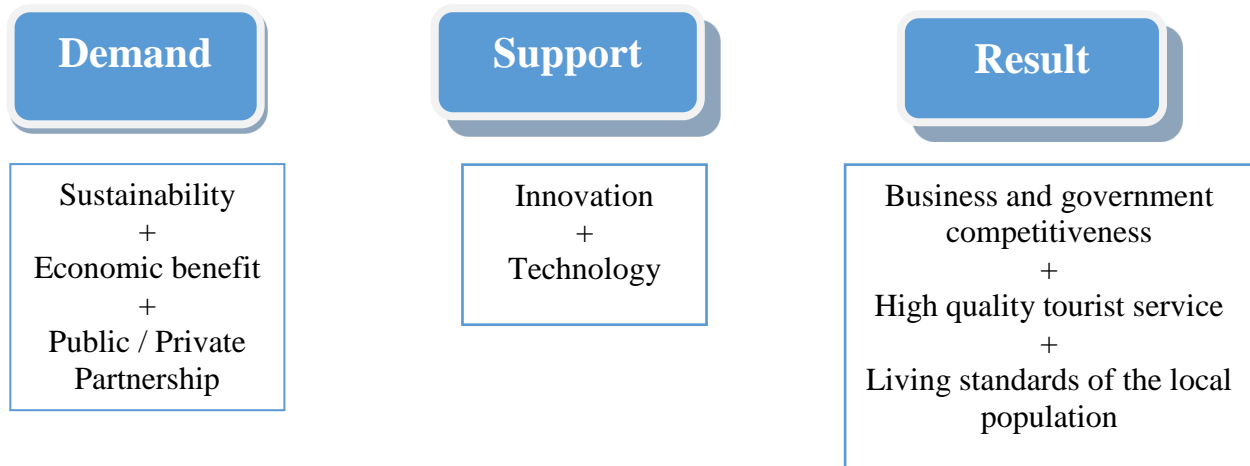
<b>ISRA (India)</b> = <b>3.117</b>	<b>SIS (USA)</b> = <b>0.912</b>	<b>ICV (Poland)</b> = <b>6.630</b>
<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE)</b> = <b>0.829</b>	<b>PIHHI (Russia)</b> = <b>0.156</b>	<b>PIF (India)</b> = <b>1.940</b>
<b>GIF (Australia)</b> = <b>0.564</b>	<b>ESJI (KZ)</b> = <b>8.716</b>	<b>IBI (India)</b> = <b>4.260</b>
<b>JIF</b> = <b>1.500</b>	<b>SJIF (Morocco)</b> = <b>5.667</b>	<b>OAJI (USA)</b> = <b>0.350</b>

To date, it has become an organizational part of the concept of tourism. Smart tourism is a new expression of tourism.

The term "Smart" is used extensively in many modern society processes such as industry, manufacturing, and services. For example: Smartphone, smart TV, smart home and so on. To date, this concept has been used in tourist attractions as the name of Smart Tourism.

Creation of regional tourist plans using information technologies in the Smart Tourism network, achieving stability of value of the account, forming tourist attitudes, satisfying the needs of tourists and increasing the efficiency of management resources.

The following scheme should be used to turn the tourist network into a Smart Tourist Network (Draper, 1997; Winter, 2007).



The basic principles of SMART-TOURISM are as follows:

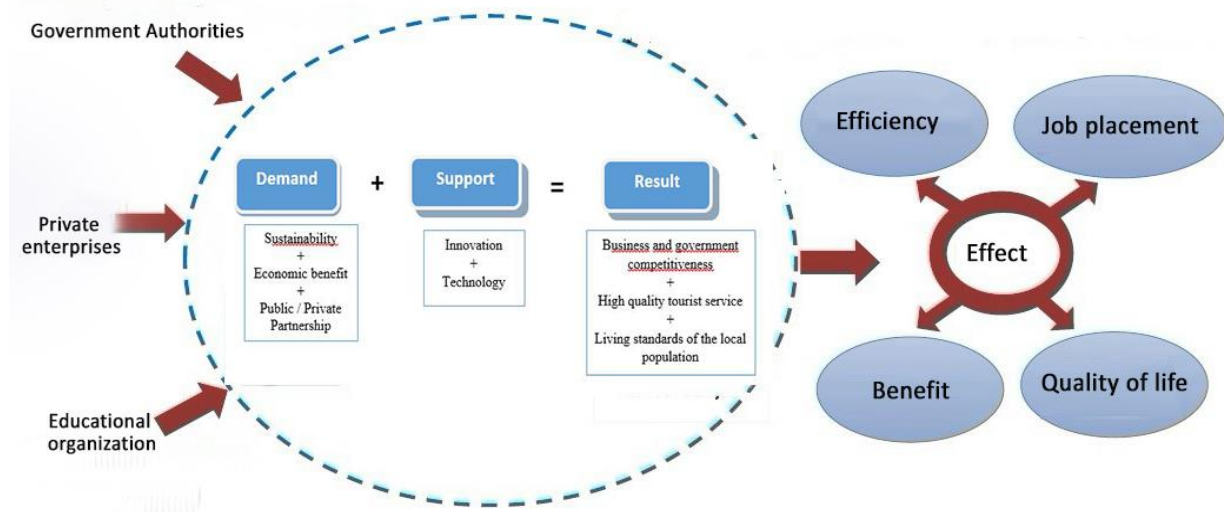
- Work on developing tourism impressions
- Providing intellectual platforms
- Collecting and disseminating information within the boundaries of the tourist area, and the effective distribution of tourist resources

- Providing micro and macro level integration of tourists in tourism industry to ensure efficient distribution of bonuses to the local community in tourism activities.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India)	= 3.117	SIS (USA)	= 0.912	ICV (Poland)	= 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE)	= 0.829	PIHHI (Russia)	= 0.156	PIF (India)	= 1.940
GIF (Australia)	= 0.564	ESJI (KZ)	= 8.716	IBI (India)	= 4.260
JIF	= 1.500	SJIF (Morocco)	= 5.667	OAJI (USA)	= 0.350

## Conceptual card of SMART tourism direction

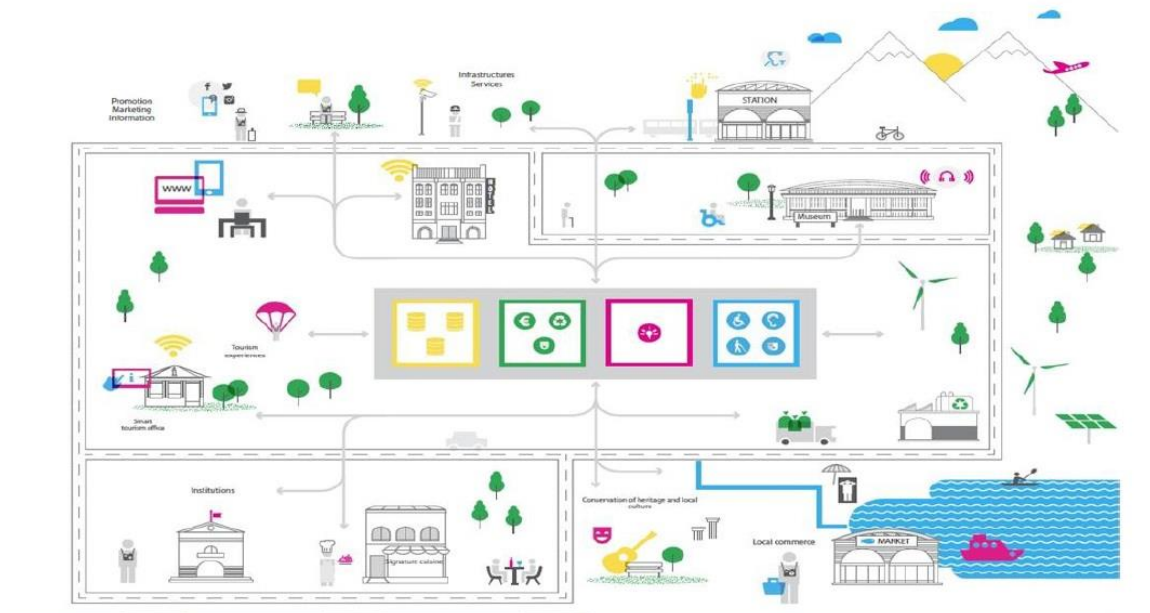


The presence of SMART-TOURISM direction also depends on the presence of the following branches in the tourism industry.

1. Creativity
2. Sustainability
3. Coordination and general involvement

4. Responsibility
5. Using information technology tools and applications

As a result, Smart-tourism conceptual card will look like this:





## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

It is important to pay particular attention to ensuring the participation of the private sector in the rapid development of our country's tourism industry, as it is in the conceptual map of Smart-tourism. Hundreds of entrepreneurs and craftsmen are now involved in the tourism industry, dealing with souvenir production, hotel management, and tourists.

### Summary

Tourist exhibitions and conferences are important in the development of tourism in foreign

countries. In order to popularize the national cultural heritage of our country abroad, to attract foreign tourists to our country and to develop domestic tourism, our country's tourism organizations organize exhibitions in major cities such as Madrid, Riga, Berlin, Paris, Tokyo, London, Moscow, take part in international exhibitions. This, of course, gives its effect.

### References:

1. Bassolas, A., Lenormand, M., Tugores, A., Gonçalves, B., & Ramasco, J. J. (2016). Touristic site attractiveness seen through Twitter. *EPJ Data Science*, 5(1). <https://doi.org/10.1140/epjds/s13688-016-0073-5>
2. Baxtishodovich, B. S., Suyunovich, T. I., & Kholiqulov, A. (2017a). The start-up of tourism in Central Asia Case of. *World Scientific News*, 67(2), 219–237.
3. Baxtishodovich, B. S., Suyunovich, T. I., & Kholiqulov, A. (2017b). *The start-up of tourism in Central Asia Case of World Scientific News*.
4. Beck, W. (2006). Narratives of world heritage in travel guidebooks. *International Journal of Heritage Studies*, 12(6), 521–535. <https://doi.org/10.1080/13527250600940207>
5. Draper, D. (1997). Touristic development and water sustainability in banff and canmore, Alberta, Canada. *Journal of Sustainable Tourism*, 5(3), 183–212. <https://doi.org/10.1080/09669589708667285>
6. International, I. (2011). *ITB World Travel Trends Report 2010/2011*. World, 01-30. [https://doi.org/http://www.itb-berlin.de/media/itb/itb\\_dl\\_de/itb\\_itb\\_berlin/itb\\_itb\\_academy/ITB\\_2015\\_WTTR\\_Report\\_A4\\_4.pdf](https://doi.org/http://www.itb-berlin.de/media/itb/itb_dl_de/itb_itb_berlin/itb_itb_academy/ITB_2015_WTTR_Report_A4_4.pdf)
7. Lawson, R. A., & Roychoudhury, S. (2016). Do travel visa requirements impede tourist travel? *Journal of Economics and Finance*, 40(4), 817–828. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s12197-015-9343-5>
8. Molz, J. G. (2005). Getting a “Flexible eye”: Round-the-world travel and scales of cosmopolitan citizenship. *Citizenship Studies*, 9(5), 517–531. <https://doi.org/10.1080/13621020500301288>
9. Razakov, S., A., & Shakhgunova, G. (2001). [Current malaria situation in the Republic of Uzbekistan]. *Med Parazitol (Mosk)*, (1), 39–41. Retrieved from <http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11548313>
10. Turner, R., & Freiermuth, E. (2017). *Travel & Tourism Economic Impact 2017: Portugal*. World Travel & Tourism Council. Retrieved from <https://www.wttc.org/-/media/files/reports/economic-impact-research/countries-2017/portugal2017.pdf>
11. Winter, T. (2007). Rethinking tourism in asia. *Annals of Tourism Research*, 34(1), 27–44. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.annals.2006.06.004>
12. Zambinova, G. K., & Bekisheva, S. T. (2015). Assessment of tourist-recreational resources of Kazakhstan. *Nauchnyy Rezul'tat. Seriya «Tekhnologii Biznesa i Servlsa»*, (4).
13. Tikhomirova, N. V. (2012). *Global strategy for the development of smart society. MESI on the way to Smart-University* [Electronic resource] Smart Education. Retrieved Nov. 22, 2017, from <http://smartmesi.blogspot.com/2012/03/smartsmart.html>
14. (2015). Explanatory Dictionary of the Russian language: In 4 t. / Ed. D.N. Ushakov (Eds.). Moscow: Ows. Encycl. : OGIZ, 1935-1940. Ulrike Gretzel & Marianna Sigala & Zheng Xiang & Chulmo Koo. Smart tourism: foundations and developments *Electron Markets* (2015) 25:179–188 DOI 10.1007/s12525-015-0196-8
15. Hujer, M., & Wangel, J. (2015). Smart Sustainable Cities: Definition and Challenges. In L. M. Hilty & B. Aebischer (Eds.), *ICT Innovations for Sustainability, Advances in Intelligent Systems and Computing*. (pp.333–349). New York: Springer.
16. Harrison, C., et al. (2010). Foundations for smarter cities. *IBM Journal of Research and Development* 54(4), 1-16.
17. (n.d.). Retrieved 2019, from [www.uzbektourism.uz](http://www.uzbektourism.uz)

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

SOI: [1.1/TAS](http://s-o-i.org/1.1/TAS) DOI: [10.15863/TAS](https://doi.org/10.15863/TAS)

## International Scientific Journal Theoretical & Applied Science

p-ISSN: 2308-4944 (print) e-ISSN: 2409-0085 (online)

Year: 2019 Issue: 04 Volume: 72

Published: 30.04.2019 <http://T-Science.org>

UDC 004.386

QR – Issue

QR – Article



**A. B. Karshiev**

head of the department "Software Engineering" docent,  
Samarkand branch of  
the Tashkent University of Information Technologies  
named after Muhammad Al Khorezmiy

**S.S. Nabyeva**

master student,  
the Tashkent University of Information Technologies  
named after Muhammad Al Khorezmiy,

**A.Sh. Egamkulov**

master student,  
the Tashkent University of Information Technologies  
named after Muhammad Al Khorezmiy,  
Republic of Uzbekistan, Samarkand

## MEDICAL INFORMATION SYSTEMS

**Abstract:** The article addresses the issues of the concept of information technology, their current capabilities. The effectiveness of the implementation of information systems of various functionalities for medical institutions (MCI). The use of modern communications and local information networks in medicine. The study of the levels of MIS, their classification and prospects for implementation.

**Key words:** MIS, MCI, information technology, classification, local network, database.

**Language:** English

**Citation:** Karshiev, A. B., Nabyeva, S. S., & Egamkulov, A. S. (2019). Medical information systems. *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 04 (72), 505-508.

**Soi:** <http://s-o-i.org/1.1/TAS-04-72-64> **Doi:**  <https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2019.04.72.64>

### Introduction

Modern medical organizations produce and accumulate huge amounts of data. The quality of medical care, the general standard of living of the population, the level of development of the country as a whole and of each of its territorial entities in particular depends on how effectively this information is used by doctors, managers, and governing bodies. Therefore, the need to use large, and at the same time still constantly growing, amounts of information in solving diagnostic, therapeutic, statistical, managerial and other tasks, determines today the creation of information systems in medical institutions.

Maps, bulletins, procedural reports, records of patients, drugs - all the workflow was done on paper. This affected the speed and, consequently, the quality of patient care, hampered the work of medical, medical personnel, which led to medical errors, a great investment of time to fill out cards, and to

compile reports. This complicated the management of health facilities MCI (lack of control over the work of the units, lack of operational, analytical information) and the work of the controlling authorities.

A feature of the MIS is the transition from local work with medical information to an integrated system, where all data passing through the institution is accessible from a single information environment. At the same time, the paperless technology is fully implemented, however, the possibility of obtaining a "hard copy" of any document remains. The use of modern medical technologies allows to improve the quality of medical services, optimize the management of various structural medical units and create the basis for reaching the world level of medical services.

### Information technology in medicine

Information technology (IT) is an ordered set of methods and methods for collecting, processing,

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

accumulating, storing, searching for distribution, protection and consumption of information carried out in the course of management activities.

Modern IT is widely used computers, computer networks and all kinds of software in the management process. The purpose of the introduction of information technology is the creation of information systems (IS) for the analysis and adoption of management decisions based on them. Information technology includes two factors: machine and human. A specific embodiment of information technology is mainly automated systems, and only in this case it is customary to talk about computer technology. For modern information technology, the following features are typical:

- end-to-end information support at all stages of information transmission on the basis of integrated databases providing for a unified unified form of data presentation, storage, search, display, recovery and protection;
- paperless processing of documents;
- collaboration opportunities based on network technology, integrated by means of communication;
- the possibility of adaptive restructuring of forms and ways of presenting information in the process of solving a problem.

The effectiveness of management depends not only on the available resources, but also on a clearly formulated realistic attainable goal, the results of which are evaluated by appropriate indicators. Without this, the control system is not effective. The main purpose of these processes is to create a single information space for all stakeholders (potential information users): various health structures and services, management and control authorities, manufacturers of medical equipment and medicines, research organizations, and consumers of medical goods and services. This will significantly intensify the exchange of information and the speed of implementation in daily practice of the latest achievements of science and practice that meet the objectives of improving and developing health care.

New information technologies can significantly improve management efficiency and solve complex health problems through prompt access to specialized databases.

### Medical information systems and local information networks

The development of information technologies and modern communications, the emergence in clinics of a large number of automated medical devices, tracking systems and individual computers led to a new round of interest and to a significant increase in the number of medical information systems (MIS) clinics, moreover, as in large medical centers with large information flows and in medium-sized medical centers and even in small clinics or clinical departments.

The modern concept of information systems involves the integration of electronic patient records (electronic patient records) with medical image archives and financial information, monitoring data from medical devices, the results of automated laboratories and tracking systems, the availability of modern means of information exchange (electronic hospital mail, Internet, video conferencing etc.).

Thus, the medical information system (MIS) is a combination of software and hardware, databases and knowledge designed to automate various processes occurring in hospitals and the health care system (MCI).

The objectives of creating an MIS are:

1. Creating a single information space;
2. Monitoring and management of the quality of care;
3. Increasing the transparency of medical institutions and the effectiveness of management decisions;
4. Analysis of the economic aspects of medical care;
5. Reducing the time of examination and treatment of patients;
6. The introduction of an MIS has a positive effect on all participants in the health care system.

### MIS levels

According to the staff of the American Institute of Medical Records (Medical Records Institute, USA), in fact, there are 5 different levels of computerization for the MIS.

The FIRST level of an MIS is automated medical records. This level is characterized by the fact that only about 50% of the information about the patient is entered into the computer system, and in various forms is given to its users in the form of reports. In other words, such a computer system is a kind of automated environment around the "paper" technology of patient management. Such automated systems usually cover patient registration, discharge, hospital transfers, entering diagnostic information, appointments, conducting transactions, financial issues, go along with the "paperwork" and serve primarily for different types of reporting.

The SECOND level of the MIS is the Computerized Medical Record System. At this level of development of the MIS, those medical documents that were not previously entered into electronic memory (first of all, we are talking about information from diagnostic devices, obtained in the form of various printouts, scans, topograms, etc.), are indexed, scanned and stored in electronic image storage (usually on magneto-optical drives). The successful implementation of such MIS began practically only in 1993.

The THIRD level of development of the MIS is the introduction of electronic medical records (Electronic Medical Records). In this case, an appropriate infrastructure should be developed in the

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

medical institution for entering, processing and storing information from their workplaces. Users must be identified by the system, they are given access rights corresponding to their status. The structure of electronic medical records is determined by computer processing capabilities. At the third level of development of an MIS, an electronic medical record may already play an active role in the decision-making process and integration with expert systems, for example, when making a diagnosis, choosing medicines, taking into account the patient's current somatic and allergic status, etc.

At the FOURTH level of development of the MIS, which the authors called the systems of electronic medical records (Electronic Patient Record Systems or other sources of Computer-based Patient Record Systems), patient records have much more information sources. They contain all the relevant medical information about a particular patient, the sources of which can be one or several medical institutions. For such a level of development, a national or international patient identification system, a unified system of terminology, information structure, coding, etc., are necessary.

The FIFTH level of development of an MIS is the Electronic Health Record. It differs from the electronic patient record system by the existence of virtually unlimited sources of information about the patient's health. Information comes from areas of alternative medicine, behavioral activities (smoking, playing sports, using diets, etc.).

At the same time, existing and projected MIS mainly perform separate functions of an information system from a number of workstations to assist in organizing information services to the accounting information system of a medical institution or major health-related processes (for example, information support for postoperative patients or maintaining medical statistics).

The specificity of medical information systems is as follows:

1. Patient orientation: the core of the MIS is the patient record.
2. Increased developer responsibility.
3. Integration of administrative, medical and financial information.
4. Integration with specific types of equipment.

Medical information systems are classified by the direction of the medical institution:

- MIS for hospitals
- MIS for polyclinics and ambulance stations
- MIS for dental clinics
- MIS for sanatoriums (medical institutions)

Medical information systems have a number of functional capabilities:

- Collection, registration, structuring and creation of information space;
- Ensuring the exchange of information;
- Storage and retrieval of information;
- Statistical data analysis;
- Monitoring the effectiveness and quality of medical care;
- Decision support;
- Analysis and control of institutions, resource management institutions;
- Support of the economic component of the treatment process;
- Training staff;

### Let us consider in more detail the basic functions of an MIS.

As in any IS, these include the collection of information, which is preceded by obtaining primary patient data as a result of his examination or automatically using special equipment for recording the patient's condition (basically such information can be considered technological), and, finally, from other specialized MIS (for example, pharmacopoeia, anesthesiology or from medical libraries). Of course, in such a system, information needs to be structured and stored, as well as search tools not only in the database, but also in various storages, in particular, roentgenograms or cardiograms. The large volumes of computations associated with the quantitative evaluation of information in the system require the inclusion of various applications in the MIS. Modern MIS work on the network, so when they operate, users can have access to distributed databases or other diverse information resources, including those located on the Internet. A significant expansion of the range of equipment used in health care, and an increase in the quality of medical care, lead to the inclusion of additional information in the MIS resource. In this way, in modern MIS, an increase in the resource is largely due to technological information. It has now become quite possible to include, for example, at the hospital level, information about drugs procured through pharmacies. So, we can assume that now the MIS can arbitrarily fully support the functions of any medical institution. Currently, MIS are based on any computers, including PDA, scanners, from tablet to tomographs, and special devices for biometric observations, digital and analog storage of information, video and photography, sound recording and playback. Moreover, thanks to network technologies, integrated MIS can have a heterogeneous architecture. MIS storage facilities allow you to work with virtually unlimited amounts of information located in local and regional networks, as well as on the Internet.

System organization of information storage is supported by DBMS, which are selected both as part of client-server technology and as a traditional database for an individual PC.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India)	= 3.117	SIS (USA)	= 0.912	ICV (Poland)	= 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE)	= 0.829	PIHHI (Russia)	= 0.156	PIF (India)	= 1.940
GIF (Australia)	= 0.564	ESJI (KZ)	= 8.716	IBI (India)	= 4.260
JIF	= 1.500	SJIF (Morocco)	= 5.667	OAJI (USA)	= 0.350

### Ways of development of medical information technology

Medical information technologies include means of influencing the organism by external informational factors, a description of the methods and methods of their use, and the process of learning practical skills. Accordingly, the further development of these technologies requires consideration and solution of the following practical issues. In the first place is the urgent question of the need for widespread introduction into clinical practice of approved means and methods of informational impact that meet such requirements as safety and ease of their use, high therapeutic efficacy of their use. The next topical issue is the promotion and encouragement of the development and creation of new means and methods of influencing the human body in accordance with the principles and postulates of information medicine. Further development and improvement of this field of medicine is associated with the optimization of means and methods of biofeedback with informational effects adequate to changes in the body in accordance with the principles and postulates of information medicine. One of the main ways to solve a number of medical, social and economic problems is currently the informatization of the work of medical personnel. These problems include the search for effective tools that can improve the three most important indicators of health care: the quality of treatment, the level of patient safety, and

the cost-effectiveness of medical care. The basic element of informatization is the use of modern clinical information systems in hospitals, equipped with decision support mechanisms. However, these systems are not widely used, since scientific and methodological approaches to the creation of clinical information systems have not yet been developed.

### Conclusion

Information technologies can be successfully applied in various fields of modern medicine. For example, in the field of patient safety, modern automated systems can enhance the quality and safety control of medicines and medical services, reduce the likelihood of medical errors, provide ambulance with the means of rapid communication and access to vital patient information. Modern technological solutions are able to provide free access to health services regardless of the place of residence of the patient, significantly increase the availability of high-tech medical services, medical expertise.

Thus, we can safely say that medical information systems, consisting of many specialized modules, help in the simultaneous solution of diagnostic, therapeutic, managerial, financial, statistical and other tasks. In turn, all this, ultimately, contributes to the achievement of the final goal of any health care facility (MCI) - the provision of quality medical services.

### References:

1. Nazarenko, G. I., Guliev, Y. I., & Ermakov, D. E. (2005). *Medical information systems: theory and practice*. (p.320). Moscow: Fizmatlit.
2. Vyalkov, A. I. (2009). *Management and economics of health care*. Moscow: GEOTAR-Media.
3. Krenke, D. (2003). *Theory and practice of building databases*. (p.800). SPb: Peter.
5. Starinsky, V. V., & Gretsova, O. P. (n.d.). Information Technologies in Oncology - FSI "Moscow P.A. Herzen Rosmedtechnoliy »
6. Homonenko, A. D. (2006). *Databases: a textbook for higher educational institutions*. (p.736). Moscow: Binom-Press.
7. (2016). Textbook on medical informatics: S.A. Feylamazov. Information technologies in medicine: A manual for medical colleges. (p.163). Makhachkala: DBMK.
8. (2005, April 5). Integration of the healthcare enterprise (IHE). Available at <http://www.ihe.net/>
9. (2005, April 5). Digital image and communication in medicine. Available at <http://medical.nema.org/>
10. (2005, April 5). Integration of the health care enterprise (IHE). Available at <http://www.ihe.net/>
11. Gusev, A. V., Romanov, F. A., & Dudanov, I. P. (2001). Experience in developing a medical information system. *Medical Academic Journal*, №1, p. 18.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIIHU (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

SOI: [1.1/TAS](#) DOI: [10.15863/TAS](#)

## International Scientific Journal Theoretical & Applied Science

p-ISSN: 2308-4944 (print) e-ISSN: 2409-0085 (online)

Year: 2019 Issue: 04 Volume: 72

Published: 30.04.2019 <http://T-Science.org>

QR – Issue



QR – Article



**Mukhammadyunus Usubzhonovich Norinov**

Doctoral student,  
Tashkent University of information technologies named  
after Muhammad al-Khorezm

**Bakhtier Abduvakhidovich Abdukodirov**

Senior lecturer,  
Fergana branch of Tashkent University of information  
technologies named after Muhammad al-Khorezm

**Azizbek Otabekovich Tillavoldiev**

Assistant,  
Fergana branch of Tashkent University of information  
technologies named after Muhammad al-Khorezm

**Nodirbek Toxirjonovich Urinov**

Assistant,  
Andijan state University

## ALGORITHM FOR ELIMINATING NOISE BY A SMOOTH-SMOOTH IMAGE MODEL

**Abstract:** The article analyzes the existing methods and technologies to eliminate possible noise or noise. An algorithm for adaptive median filtering is proposed, designed to attenuate a more intense bipolar impulse noise, as well as a method for eliminating noise by a piecewise-smooth image model. A method of image processing by adaptive low-frequency filtering has been developed, which allows to significantly improve the image quality.

**Key words:** impulse, intensity, signal filtering, noise, piecewise smooth model.

**Language:** Russian

**Citation:** Norinov, M. U., Abdukodirov, B. A., Tillavoldiev, A. O., & Urinov, N. T. (2019). Algorithm for eliminating noise by a smooth-smooth image model. *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 04 (72), 509-512.

**Soi:** <http://s-o-i.org/1.1/TAS-04-72-65> **Doi:**  <https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2019.04.72.65>

### АЛГОРИТМ УСТРАНЕНИЯ ШУМА КУСОЧНО-ГЛАДКОЙ МОДЕЛЬЮ ИЗОБРАЖЕНИЯ

**Аннотация:** В статье проведен анализ существующих методов и технологий устранения возможных помех или шумов. Предложен алгоритм адаптивной медианной фильтрации, предназначенный для ослабления более интенсивной биполярной импульсной помехи, а также метод устранения шума кусочно-гладкой моделью изображения. Разработана методика обработки изображений путем адаптивной низкочастотной фильтрации, позволяющая существенно повысить качество изображения.

**Ключевые слова:** импульс, интенсивность, фильтрация сигнала, помехи, кусочно-гладкий модель.

### Введение

Интенсивное развитие средств вычислительной техники и информационных технологий открыли широкой сферы их применение в обработке различного вида изображений.

В частности, расширение сферы применения информационных технологий в космонавтике, в

медицине, в криминалистике, в геодезии, в картографии, в транспорте, в архиве, в телевидении и которые соответственно внесли ощутимый вклад в развитие экономики, техники и науки. Одновременно возникли и другие проблемы, связанные наличием помех или белого шума в изображениях. Поэтому приобрела необходимость разработки новых методов и

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	РИИЦ (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

технологий устранения возможных помех или шумов.

### Основная часть

Алгоритм адаптивной медианной фильтрации предназначен для ослабления более интенсивной биполярной импульсной помехи, вероятность появления импульсов которой превышает  $p_n \leq 0,2$  [1]. Кроме того, этот алгоритм обладает тем преимуществом, что он в меньшей степени искажает детали изображения, не поврежденные импульсным шумом. Особенностью адаптивного алгоритма является то, что в отличие от обычного медианного фильтра он при определенных условиях увеличивает размер окна, перекрывающего нечетное число пикселей, которым сканируется фильтруемое изображение [4]. При реализации алгоритма измеряются следующие значения интенсивностей пикселей, оказавшихся в пределах окна, которое, как и ранее, может иметь любую форму (прямоугольную, крестообразную и т. д.):

- максимальное значение интенсивности  $L_{\max}$ ;
- минимальное значение интенсивности (яркости)  $L_{\min}$ ;
- значение интенсивности пикселя, занимающего центральное положение в окне  $L_c$ ;
- медиана последовательности пикселей, оказавшихся в окне  $L_{\text{мед}}$ ;
- максимальный допустимый размер фильтрующего окна  $S_{\max}$ , который в диалоге задается числом пикселей.

Алгоритм адаптивной медианной фильтрации включает в себя две ветви: I и II. Задача, которую выполняет первая ветвь, — это определение, является ли медиана  $L_{\text{мед}}$  результатом воздействия импульса помехи (положительного или отрицательного) на изображение, или нет. В том случае если выполняется условие  $L_{\min} < L_{\text{мед}} < L_{\max}$ , то считается, что найденное значение  $L_{\text{мед}}$  не является результатом воздействия импульса помехи на изображение, и тогда совершается переход к выполнению второй ветви алгоритма. При выполнении второй ветви алгоритма проверяется, является ли значение интенсивности пикселя, занимающего центральное положение в окне,  $L_c$ , результатом воздействия импульса помехи (положительного или отрицательного) на изображение, или нет [5]. \*В том случае если выполняется условие  $L_{\min} < L_c < L_{\max}$ , то считается, что значение  $L_c$ , не является результатом воздействия импульса помехи на изображение, и в качестве результата фильтрации принимается значение  $L_c$ , а не значение медианы. Благодаря этому минимизируются искажения, неизбежно

возникающие при фильтрации изображения. В том случае, если это неравенство не выполняется, т. е. либо  $L_c = L_{\max}$  либо  $L_c = L_{\min}$ , считается, что это результат воздействия импульса помехи на изображение, и в качестве результата фильтрации принимается значение  $L_{\text{мед}}$ , которое, как следует из результата работы первой ветви алгоритма, не является следствием воздействия импульса помехи.

Продолжая изложение работы алгоритма, рассмотрим случай, когда при выполнении первой ветви алгоритма условие  $L_{\min} < L_{\text{мед}} < L_{\max}$  оказывается нарушенным, т. е. случай, когда медиана считается результатом воздействия импульса помехи на изображение. В этом случае согласно алгоритму, увеличиваются размеры фильтрующего окна и повторяются вычисления первой ветви алгоритма. Так будет продолжаться до тех пор, пока либо не будет найдена медиана, не считающаяся результатом воздействия импульса помехи, либо размеры окна не достигнут максимально разрешенного размера  $S_{\max}$ . В последнем случае в качестве результата фильтрации принимается значение  $L_c$  [3].

Далее приводится схема алгоритма.

Ветвь I:

$$A1 = L_{\text{мед}} - L_{\min};$$

$$A2 = L_{\text{мед}} - L_{\max};$$

если  $A1 > 0$  и  $A2 < 0$ , то перейти к ветви II; иначе увеличить размер окна; если размер окна меньше либо равен  $S_{\max}$ , повторить ветвь I; иначе принять в качестве результата  $L_c$ .

Ветвь II:

$$B1 = L_c - L_{\min};$$

$$B2 = L_c - L_{\max};$$

если  $B1 > 0$  и  $B2 < 0$ , принять в качестве результата  $L_c$ ; иначе принять в качестве результата  $L_{\text{мед}}$ .

Метод, устранения шума кусочно-гладкой моделью изображения предназначен для оценки и устранения шума из изображения в автоматическом режиме, он базируется на использовании кусочно-гладкой модели изображения (piecewise smooth image model) [2]. Алгоритм этого метода включает в себя следующие этапы.

1. Вначале зашумленное изображение  $L(x, y)$  подвергается сегментации, при этом из множества известных методов сегментации авторы применяют так называемый К-метод, как это описано в [3]. В результате проведенной сегментации изображение оказывается разделенным на сегменты (области)  $\Omega_i$ . При этом каждый сегмент представляется средним значением цвета и некоторой пространственной протяженностью. Пространственная протяженность задается таким образом, чтобы

## Impact Factor:

SISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	ПИИЦ (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

форма сегмента имела бы тенденцию к выпуклой форме, и чтобы все сегменты имели бы примерно одинаковые размеры.

2. Следующая операция, авторы ее называют по сегментной аффинной реконструкцией (per-segment affine reconstruction), заключается в том, что каждый сегмент подвергается аффинному преобразованию, в результате которого для каждого сегмента находится функция  $L_{AF}(x, y)$ , определяющая распределение яркости в его пределах, для которой

$$\sigma^2 = \overline{[L(x, y) - L_{AF}(x, y)]^2}$$

минимально. Эта функция называется аффинной реконструкцией сегмента. Далее принимается, что разность между зашумленным изображением и его аффинной реконструкцией

$$\Delta L(x, y) = L(x, y) - L_{AF}(x, y),$$

состоит из двух составляющих: составляющей текстуры  $L_T(x, y)$ , и составляющей шума  $L_{Ш}(x, y)$ :

$$\Delta L(x, y) = L_T(x, y) + L_{Ш}(x, y),$$

Таким образом, исходное, зашумленное изображение рассматривается как сумма трех составляющих

$$L(x, y) = L_{AF}(x, y) + L_T(x, y) + L_{Ш}(x, y),$$

при этом составляющими, представляющими не зашумлённое изображение  $L_c(x, y)$ , т.е. сигнальными, являются первые две.

$$L_c(x, y) = L_{AF}(x, y) + L_T(x, y).$$

Далее в цитируемой работе принимается, что:

- аффинная реконструкция сегмента не является случайным процессом;
- текстура и шум являются случайными взаимно некоррелированными процессами, ковариационные матрицы которых -  $K_T$  и  $K_{Ш}$  соответственно;
- сигнальный и шумовой компоненты взаимно независимы.

3. Использование аффинные реконструкции сегментов для реконструкции всего изображения в целом, то в нем возникнут ложные контуры и, кроме того, реальные границы станут более резкими. Во избежание этого производится оценка размытости границ в исходном, зашумленном изображении следующим образом [8]. Вычисляются ряд размытых версий  $L_{AF\Omega}(x, y, r)$

аффинной реконструкции  $L_{AF}(x, y)$  путем ее свертки с импульсной характеристикой

$$h(x, y) = \frac{1}{\pi r^2} \exp\left(-\frac{x^2 + y^2}{r^2}\right),$$

где  $r$  – параметр, определяющий степень размытия. Чем больше  $r$ , тем больше размытие. Затем каждая граница  $C_{ij}$  между сегментами  $\Omega_i$  и  $\Omega_j$  расширяется в пять раз как в направлении области  $\Omega_i$ , так и в направлении области  $\Omega_j$  для того, чтобы получить маску  $G_{ij}$ . После этого находятся значения средних квадратов разностей исходного изображения  $L(x, y)$  и его размытых версий  $L_{AF\Omega}(x, y, r)$  для каждого значения параметра  $r$  в пределах маски, т. е.

$$\sigma^2(r) = \overline{[L(x, y) - L_{AF\Omega}(x, y, r)]^2},$$

За значение параметра, характеризующего степень размытия в исходном изображении, принимается то, обозначим его  $r_{\text{опт}}$ , которому соответствует минимум среднего квадрата  $\overline{[L(x, y) - L_{AF\Omega}(x, y, r)]^2}$ , вычисленного в пределах маски  $G_{ij}$ . После этого производится замена неразмытых границ в пределах, определяемых маской  $G_{ij}$ , на размытые границы, взятые из аффинной реконструкции  $L_{AF\Omega}(x, y, r)$  полученной при найденном параметре размытия  $r_{\text{опт}}$ .

4. Далее, применяя Байесовский подход к решению задачи, находятся апостериорные оценки ковариационных матриц шума  $K_{\text{аш}}$  и текстуры  $K_{\text{ат}}$  соответственно [7].

5. Заключительным этапом алгоритма является реконструкция обрабатываемого изображения. Для этой цели авторы используют: исходное, зашумленное изображение, его аффинную реконструкцию, полученную при найденном параметре размытия  $r_{\text{опт}}$ , а также апостериорные оценки матриц шума и текстуры.

Описанный метод действительно является эффективным в отношении подавления шума;

### Заключение

Разработана методика обработки изображений путем адаптивной низкочастотной фильтрации, позволяющая существенно повысить качество изображения, отличающаяся применением низкочастотных фильтров в зависимости от типа шума на изображении.

Модифицирован метод выделения контуров изображения путем вычисления градиента, который отличается большей точностью вычисления градиента изображения.



## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

## References:

1. Gruzman, I. S. (2000). *Tsifrovaya obrabotka izobrazheniy v informatsionnykh sistemakh: Uchebnoe posobie.* (p.168). Novosibirsk: Izd-vo NGTU.
2. Bezrukov, B. N. (2002). *Spetsifika videokontrolya izobrazheniy veshchatel'nogo televideniya.* Materialy mezhdunarodnogo kongressa HAT, Moskva, pp.215-216.
3. Veligosha, D. A. (2010). Algoritm szhatiya izobrazheniy na osnove veyvlet-preobrazovaniy. *Izv. Orel GTU. Inf. sistemy i tekhnol., №5,* pp. 13-16.
4. Abramov, S. K., Fevralev, D. V., Roenko, A. A., Zryakhov, M. S., & Lukin, V. V. (2011). *Obrabotka informatsii v tsifrovyykh sistemakh svyazi.* Uchebnoe posobie po laboratornomu praktikumu. (p.38, p.1). Khar'kov: KhAI.
5. Belikova, T. P., Stenina, I. I., & Yashunskaya, N. I. (1997). *Obrabotka izobrazheniy i sindromnyy analiz priznakov dlya uluchsheniya izobrazheniy.* *Komp'yuternaya optika, № 17,* pp. 103-111.
6. Betkhin, Y. S., & Bryantsev, A. A. (2012). *Kompressiya zashumlennykh izobrazheniy v biblioteke veyvlet-kodekov.* *Vestnik RGRTU, №1.* Riga, pp.146-147.
7. Shapiro, L., & Stokman, D. (2006). *Komp'yuternoe zrenie.* (p.752). Moscow: BINOM. Laboratoriya znaniy.
8. Gonsales, R., & Vuds, R. (2005). *Tsifrovaya obrabotka izobrazheniy.* (p.1072). Moscow: Tekhnosfera.
9. Belyaev, E. A., & Tyurlikov, A. M. (2007). *Upravlenie skorost'yu i oshibkoy kodirovaniya v sisteme szhatiya i peredachi videoinformatsii s ogranicheniyami na pamyat' peredayushchego i primamayushchego ustroystv.* *Komp'yuternaya optika. Moskva, №2,* pp.69-76.
10. Cherepanova, A. V. (2011). *Otsenka kachestva szhatoy videoinformatsii.* *Vesti. SibGUTI, № 1,* pp.61-70.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

SOI: [1.1/TAS](#) DOI: [10.15863/TAS](#)

## International Scientific Journal Theoretical & Applied Science

p-ISSN: 2308-4944 (print) e-ISSN: 2409-0085 (online)

Year: 2019 Issue: 04 Volume: 72

Published: 30.04.2019 <http://T-Science.org>

QR – Issue



QR – Article



Zulfiya Nigmatullayevna Akmalova

teacher,

University of world economy and diplomacy

UDC 81-13

## DIVERSITY OF MODERN METHODS IN THE TEACHING FOREIGN LANGUAGE

**Abstract:** This article purpose is highlights of modern methods in education, so diversity of modern methods in the teaching foreign language and importance of educational technologies in the effectiveness lesson, difficulties, problems and tasks.

**Key words:** foreign language, modern methods, teaching, learning, educational technologies, effectiveness, lesson.

**Language:** English

**Citation:** Akmalova, Z. N. (2019). Diversity of modern methods in the teaching foreign language. *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 04 (72), 513-516.

**Soi:** <http://s-o-i.org/1.1/TAS-04-72-66> **Doi:**  <https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2019.04.72.66>

### Introduction

In recent decades, great importance is given to the search for new or reconstruction of old, well-known pedagogical science teaching methods that could ensure the relationship of educational, developmental and educational functions of education.

The new methods of teaching that are born often do not have a psychological and pedagogical justification, they are difficult to classify, but their use in the educational process brings students undoubted success. Let us give some of these methods as an example.

It is obvious that at the end of the XXI century in Uzbekistan there was a kind of revolution in the methods of teaching a foreign language. Previously, all priorities were given to grammar, almost mechanical mastery of vocabulary, reading and literary translation. Language acquisition was carried out through a long routine work.

### Materials and Methods

Tasks were offered quite monotonous: reading the text, translation, memorizing new words, retelling, text exercises. When priorities were given to reading and working on conversational topics, only one function of the language was implemented – informative. It is not surprising that only a few people knew the language well: only very purposeful and hardworking people could master it at a high level[1].

Today, language teaching has acquired an applied character, while previously it was relatively abstract and theoretical. Progress and fundamental changes in the methods of language learning, of course, associated with innovations in the field of psychology of personality and group. Now there are noticeable changes in people's minds and the development of new thinking: there is a proclaimed need for self-actualization and self-realization. The psychological factor of learning foreign languages is put forward in a leading position.

### The fundamental method

Is the oldest and traditional method. That is how Lyceum students taught Latin and Greek, while French was absorbed naturally, along with the strict suggestions of governesses and communication with maman and papan. The fundamental technique relied seriously in language schools. The translator is never sure of his knowledge of a foreign language, he understands the unpredictability of speech situations. Being engaged in the classical method, students not only operate with a variety of lexical layers, but also learn to look at the world through the eyes of a native speaker. Perhaps the most famous representative of the classical methods of teaching a foreign language is N.Bonk. Her English textbooks have long become classics of the genre and have with stood the competition of recent years[2].

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India)	= 3.117	SIS (USA)	= 0.912	ICV (Poland)	= 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE)	= 0.829	PIHHI (Russia)	= 0.156	PIF (India)	= 1.940
GIF (Australia)	= 0.564	ESJI (KZ)	= 8.716	IBI (India)	= 4.260
JIF	= 1.500	SJIF (Morocco)	= 5.667	OAJI (USA)	= 0.350

### Communicative method

There are many different approaches to learning English and one of them is communicative approach or communicative approach. In the ranking of popularity among other methods of the English language, the first line is actively held by the method of teaching, which is based on a positively proven in the US and Europe communicative approach to teaching students. The main attention of this communicative method of teaching English pays the language learning process and aid in the avoidance of fear and the language barrier. The communicative approach was born in the 60-70 years in the UK. It was at that time that English began to become an international language. At that time, there were techniques such as grammatical translation technique, audio-lingual, etc. All of them had their disadvantages and people who studied English as a foreign language came to the conclusion that they did not meet their needs. The need of these people was to put into practice the knowledge gained, rather than systematic and in-depth language acquisition. People who learned English to communicate on it, did not know spoken language and knew nothing about verbal etiquette. That is, they felt disadvantaged during real communication. The purpose of this method was to teach people to communicate in real life. The method used many techniques that were used earlier in other techniques.

This method is different from others in that the educational fictional texts and far from real life texts that are studied by students in other methods are replaced by dialogues from everyday life. Students beat them in such a way as to cause each other to talk, that is, to motivate another person.

### Linguosociocultural method

Linguosociocultural method involves contacting such a component as social and cultural environment. This method, which includes two aspects of communication – linguistic and intercultural, was born at the intersection of language and culture. Linguosociocultural method combines language structures (grammar, vocabulary, etc..) with non-linguistic factors. Then at the junction of the worldview on a national scale and language, that is, a kind of way of thinking is born the rich world of language, which wrote the linguist V. von Humboldt: "through the diversity of language, we discover the richness of the world and the diversity of what we know in it..."Linguosociocultural method is based on the following axiom: "language is a social and cultural structures"[4]. We learn the world through thinking in a certain cultural area and use language to Express our impressions, opinions, emotions, perceptions. The purpose of language learning using this method is to facilitate the understanding of the interlocutor, the formation of perception on an intuitive level. Therefore, every student who has chosen such an

organic and holistic approach should treat the language as a mirror reflecting the geography, climate, history of the people, the conditions of their life, traditions, everyday life, everyday behavior, creativity.

### Game education

Game education - is to create a situation of choice and decision-making, which reproduced the conditions close to real. It assumes roles that enable participants to understand, experience and learn new functions. The game contains a specific event or phenomenon to be modeled, and it is allowed to refer the game time to any period (present, past, future). As a rule, a game education is a model of a segment of future professional activity of students. This is an imitation of the management, research, pedagogical real activity of the teacher, the head of the educational institution.

The distinctive features of the education game can be called: imitation of the real process in the game with the help of the model; the distribution of roles between the participants of the game, their interaction with each other; the difference in interests of the participants of the game and the emergence of conflict situations; the presence of a common game goal of the whole team, which is achieved in the process of interaction of players and unites all its participants; consideration of the results of activities; the implementation of a chain of decisions in the game, each of which depends on the previous, as well as on the decisions taken by other participants of the game. The undoubted advantage of education games is that they combine theory and practice, contributing to the formation of including professional knowledge and practical skills. Games increase interest in the subject, as they are accompanied by positive emotions.

### The intensive method

An intensive procedure has been gaining Particular popularity of intensive methods of teaching English. The intensive method is aimed at the formation of "expressive speech behavior", and therefore often has a linguistic character. In good courses, you are likely to be provided with opportunities for unlimited communication and maximum realization of potential, and the "focus" of the course will get your needs. Each student will be able to feel like a person. And educational methods, most likely, will be dialogical communication and trainings[6].

In recent years, many of the ideas on which the theory of intensive education is based have become the property of the wider pedagogical community. Some of them are developed in scientific research, others are tested only in practice. Practice has shown that the use of even some provisions of intensive training gives positive results[7]. However, a fundamentally new quality in the educational process

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

can be achieved only when all the provisions of intensive training, reflected in its principles, will be presented in an integrated system. The General scheme of the methodical system is presented as the relationship of the following main components: goals, content of the subject and the educational process, tools and methods.

### The emotional-semantic method

The origins of the emotional-semantic method of learning foreign languages is the Bulgarian psychiatrist Lozanov, who worked with patients on his own method of psychocorrection. He created "interest groups" and learning a foreign language was a medical tool. In Moscow, the achievements of Lozanov used in 2 language schools: "System-3" and "School Kitaygorodskaya" of Course, the methods of Igor Shekhter and Galina Kitaygorodskaya as different from the system Lozanov as their students – from the patients of the Bulgarian doctor. School of the Kitaygorodskaya for 25 years working on the methodology based on the combination of lozanovski developments with the fundamental course, and takes both adults and children. Schechter's method involves the teacher's free language communication with students from the first lesson. Students choose a middle name, familiar to the native speaker of the studied language, and the corresponding "legend" architect from Glasgow, violinist from Palermo, etc[8].

The Essence of the method is that the phrases and constructions are remembered naturally. The school "System-3" refused to install the creator of the method, which claimed that the basic grammatical rules of the student must "reach" on their own. Grammar courses serve as bridges-links between the stages of learning (there are 3). It is assumed that after the first stage, the student will not be lost in the country of the studied language, after the second – he will not get lost in the grammar of his own monologue, and after the third he will be able to be a full participant in any discussion. As can be seen from the above analysis, today there is a huge variety of methods of teaching a foreign language. Schechter's method - emotional and semantic approach to teaching foreign languages - is a scientific direction in linguistics, which States that the development of a foreign language should be similar to the generation of speech in the native language [9]. The Schechter

method refers to direct interactive game methods of active learning.

The method of immersion is based on the following main positions:

1. Students construct their own knowledge, so teachers must constantly open up to students the possibility of using the knowledge they already possess, and at the same time play an active role in their own learning.

2. Mastering literacy should be a natural consequence of the interest of the students themselves, so the students, as a great-two hundred forty-one, choose your own reading materials and write essays on topics that interest them.

3. Reading is understanding, i.e. revealing the meaning of the read text. It cannot be likened to a set of private skills located in a hierarchical sequence, which is enough to own to learn to read.

4. The main purpose of the ability to write - a message of information. Teachers allow students to choose their own topics for essays, have a positive attitude to their attempts at self-expression and organize an audience ready to listen to the student's work.

5. Mastering literacy is a natural process. Exchange of views and opinions is a significant contribution to the process of formation of students' knowledge. Teachers teach children to interact with each other in the process of reading and writing.

6. Willingness to take risks and make mistakes is a necessary condition for improvement in reading and writing. Through various levels of "fallacy", children form their own integral systems of written language, and teachers encourage students to be independent, self-organized and to treat their mistakes as a necessary part of learning.

### Conclusion

Therefore, the main task of a modern foreign language teacher is to determine the goals, means, and most importantly methods. Then the choice of courses and curriculum will not be so difficult. The method of intensification of psycho-intellectual activity is intended for emotional impact on the group with the help of certain techniques of the leader: his charm, artistry and "sports" form of his logic. The teacher, who uses the oral technology of micro-discovery method in his activity, expresses two functions. On the one hand, he acts as a brainstorming conductor, on the other - as an improviser.

### References:

1. Halskov, N. D. (2000). *Modern methods of teaching foreign languages*. Manual for teachers. (p.165). Moscow: ARCTI.
2. Dzhurinsky, A. N. (1999). *History of pedagogy: textbook for students of pedagogical universities*. (p.432). Moscow: VLADOS.

**Impact Factor:**

<b>ISRA (India)</b>	<b>= 3.117</b>	<b>SIS (USA)</b>	<b>= 0.912</b>	<b>ICV (Poland)</b>	<b>= 6.630</b>
<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE)</b>	<b>= 0.829</b>	<b>PIHHI (Russia)</b>	<b>= 0.156</b>	<b>PIF (India)</b>	<b>= 1.940</b>
<b>GIF (Australia)</b>	<b>= 0.564</b>	<b>ESJI (KZ)</b>	<b>= 8.716</b>	<b>IBI (India)</b>	<b>= 4.260</b>
<b>JIF</b>	<b>= 1.500</b>	<b>SJIF (Morocco)</b>	<b>= 5.667</b>	<b>OAJI (USA)</b>	<b>= 0.350</b>

- Dzhurinsky, A. V. (2000). *Pedagogy: history of pedagogical ideas: a Training manual.* (p.352). Moscow: Pedagogical society of Russia.
- Kodzhaspirov, G. M. (2005). *Pedagogical dictionary: For students. higher. and average. PED. studies'. institutions.* (p.176). Moscow: Publishing center "Academy".
- Passov, E. I. (1985). *Communicative method of teaching foreign language speaking: a Guide for foreign teachers.* (p.208). Moscow: Education.
- Ter-Minasova, S. G. (2000). *Language and intercultural communication.* (p.261). Moscow: Word.
- Petrusinsshy, V. V. (1991). *Intensivnye metody avtomatizirovannogo obucheniya.* Moscow.
- Sinitsyn, E. S. (2001). *Teoriya tvorchestva, strukturnyy analiz myshleniya, metod mikrootkr'piy.* Novosibirsk.
- Slastenin, V. A., Isaev, I. F., Mishchenko, A. I., & Shiyarov, E. N. (1998). *Pedagogika.* Moscow.
- Khutorskoy, A. V. (1998). *Evristscheskoe obuchenie: Teoriya, metodologiya, praktika.* Moscow.
- Ellis, A., & Fouts, D. (1993). *Pedagogicheskie innovatsii.* Moscow.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

SOI: [1.1/TAS](#) DOI: [10.15863/TAS](#)

## International Scientific Journal Theoretical & Applied Science

p-ISSN: 2308-4944 (print) e-ISSN: 2409-0085 (online)

Year: 2019 Issue: 04 Volume: 72

Published: 30.04.2019 <http://T-Science.org>

QR – Issue



QR – Article



Feruzha Shukurovna Djurayeva  
teacher,  
Tashkent State Technical University  
named after Islam Karimov

UDC 81-13

## COMMUNICATIVE METHOD AGAINST THE TRADITIONAL METHOD OF TEACHING FOREIGN LANGUAGE

**Abstract:** This article highlights in the ranking of popularity among other methods of the English language the first line actively holds the method of teaching which, there are many different approaches to learning English and one of them is a communicative approach.

**Key words:** methodology, traditional method, non-traditional method, communicative method, teaching, foreign language.

**Language:** English

**Citation:** Djurayeva, F. S. (2019). Communicative method against the traditional method of teaching foreign language. *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 04 (72), 517-520.

**Soi:** <http://s-o-i.org/1.1/TAS-04-72-67> **Doi:**  <https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2019.04.72.67>

### Introduction

The teaching of foreign languages, as an integral part of the General education system, is subject to the main trends in the development of this system. This is most clearly expressed in teaching methods.

Today there are two approaches to the study of foreign languages: traditional and non-traditional.

### Materials and Methods

The traditional method of learning English is also called grammar-translation. It consists in the systematic study of grammatical material, phonetics (pronunciation), forms the skills of translation and reading. Students make phrases and sentences from words, using their grammatical knowledge. They make up dialogues, memorize them, learn words on topics, retell texts, perform written grammar exercises[1]. The main features of this approach are: memorization of the material and thoroughness. The peculiarity of the traditional method is that in the process of work, students must master all types of speech activity in a given volume. Naturally, this involves a thorough study of all aspects of the language: grammar, phonetics, vocabulary. There are two main approaches in the traditional method: isolated and complex[2]. An isolated approach is when the teacher teaches first phonetics, then reading, then grammar. With this approach, all aspects of the language are studied separately and in one or another sequence. It is assumed that then it will be possible to "assemble" a real live foreign language into a single

system as a model of a children's designer. This is the most reliable way to never learn a language. This is usually taught where no one is seriously interested in learning a language and therefore language learning is only a formality[3].

An integrated approach is when all aspects of the language are studied in conjunction. For example, texts for reading and listening, monologues, dialogues, grammar exercises contain specially selected vocabulary (words) and grammar according to the tasks. Students practice them in all types of speech activity, combine them with each other. The work is organized in such a way that the same words, grammatical phenomena, are repeatedly found in the text and in exercises, are played in situations. Due to this, there is the most effective assimilation of language material. In General, the skill of the teacher working on the traditional method is determined by the ability to "link" all aspects and components in a single effective complex.

The traditional method involves systematic training for quite a long time. Currently, the so-called "communicative" method of language learning is widely used, designed for people who already have at least an elementary level of knowledge. This technique was developed by the British after world war II and appeared in the mid-60s of the last century. Since then, it has changed greatly and gained mass distribution throughout the world. The so-called non-traditional methods of learning foreign languages began to Mature in our country in the Soviet era, but

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

they did not reach the masses, because the grammar-translation method prevailed, and all state educational institutions worked only on it. Much has been said and written about its effectiveness. In the United States, linguist and anthropologist Dell Hymes developed the concept of communicative competence. This was done in response to the concept of linguistic competence of an ideal native speaker developed by Chomsky. Communicative competence clarified what it means to "know the language". In addition to perfect command of the structures of the language, communicative competence also implies the ability to adequately use these structural elements in different situations of communication. This idea was skillfully formulated in the statement of Hymes that "there are rules of use, without which the rules of grammar are useless. All results are achieved by minimizing the use of the student's native language during the lessons[4].

When using this approach, it is very important to teach a person to think in a foreign language, so that he perceives a foreign language without any associations with the native language. With this method of training, the study of theoretical aspects is minimized or absent, and the main attention is paid to live communication, i.e. speaking. When using a communicative approach, it is very important to try to make the lessons as interesting and exciting as possible for the student, as this contributes greatly to the good consolidation of the material and allows the information to remain in the memory of the student for a long time. Topics for discussion are chosen in such a way that they correspond to the range of personal or professional interests of the student and match his age. Often there is a misconception that when using a communicative approach to the study of grammar is given unforgivably little time[5].

In fact, in the process of learning a lot of attention and a sufficient amount of time is paid to vocabulary and grammar, but their development is not the main purpose of learning a foreign language. Now that the first wave of enthusiasm has passed, some aspects of communicative learning are considered more critically. With the introduction of a communicative approach to the teaching of a foreign language there is a problem of teacher training, development of educational materials, testing and evaluation of achievements.

Among the most frequently discussed issues:

- 1) can communicative training be applied at all stages of training;
- 2) is it equally suitable for teaching English as a second language and as a foreign language;
- 3) whether it requires the complete rejection of the grammatical curriculum or only to revise it and adapt;
- 4) how this approach can be assessed; how suitable it is for non-native speakers. Speaking about the educational materials used in the communicative teaching of a foreign language, it should be noted their

almost unlimited diversity. Proponents of the communicative campaign consider educational materials as a way to influence the quality of educational communication and language use. Educational materials thus play a primary role in stimulating the communicative use of language. Traditionally, there are three main types of educational materials: text-based, based on the communicative task, realities.

Communicative method of teaching English is more focused on practical needs: grammar - in a very limited form as needed, vocabulary - as needed for practical tasks, practice - in the form of dialogues and life situations. Discussion of real life situations attracts students, arouses keen interest and desire to share their ideas. The teacher directs students to perform a language task. The main place in the communicative teaching of a foreign language is occupied by game situations, work with a partner, tasks to find mistakes that not only allow you to increase the vocabulary, but also teach you to think analytically. Communicative method, first of all, is needed in order to remove the fear of live communication. A person who has no fears that he will not be understood can easily find a common language in a foreign country, owning a standard set of grammatical structures and having a vocabulary of up to 1000 words[6].

But there is a downside to any medal. In this case, it is a poor lexicon and clichéd phrases. And if you add to this grammatical errors, you can easily earn the reputation of not too smart interlocutor.

Many proponents of the communicative approach support the use of authentic materials in the classroom. These can be different language realities such as signs, magazines, advertisements and Newspapers or visual sources around which communication can be built (maps, pictures, symbols, graphs, tables, etc.). Representatives of the "traditional" school believe that non-traditional methods are only suitable to learn the language at the time, for example, for a tourist trip. But to read the language of the newspaper or use it for work, you must first learn the grammar "base". Since the distinctive features of the traditional method - is the extensiveness and thoroughness, in contrast to the intensive methods, students do not try to "dive" and start thinking in the target language, and with a cold grammatical calculation translates each phrase from Russian to English and Vice versa[7].

Traditional methods are used by those who need language not as a means, but as a goal. That is, philologists-linguists, doomed to delve into the structures of the language, and those who want to master it perfectly - to write, read, translate, communicate freely on it. There is no method that can guarantee knowledge forever. But after the end of the course, where teaching was conducted on non-traditional methods, forgetting often happens even

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

faster. This is due to the fact that such lessons are mainly conversational. The most important problem of non-traditional methods is how not to lose intensively acquired practical skills, not being able to regularly apply them in real life. The most important problem of the traditional method is how to make the acquired extensive knowledge to bring to the level of practical skills. Both problems require, ultimately, the solution of the same problem - to find opportunities for regular practical application of the acquired knowledge.

Let us now consider the communicative method of teaching English. The overview of the methodology given in this section is based on the common European concept of teaching foreign languages in accordance with this methodology, and therefore most of the recommendations are given regarding "foreign languages"[8]. However, it should be noted that the communicative method was originally developed in relation to the English language as the most common means of international communication (which, incidentally, can be seen from the extensive terminology given in this section), but because all that is said below, primarily refers to the teaching of English and tested in practice it is in the course of teaching.

In the English version of both levels, researchers Dj.van Ek and John. Trim is identified as the main components such as:

1) categorized the situation of communication (contacts with the persons in situation of social communication and social interaction, a situation of textual activities, the situation of communication in the socio-cultural context of the target language -- speech and social etiquette, etc., a situation associated with mastering the language of educational activities, a situation of acquaintance with the culture of the people and the country of studied language; the communicative situation with native speakers of the target language, suggesting a learning out in the process of interaction with them, assistance, bug fixes, tooltip and etc.);

2) the functions of language and the most appropriate options for their implementation (search and receipt of information, expression and clarification of the relationship, the expression of doubt, pleasure, happiness, fear, etc.);

3) means of designation and transmission of General meanings (existence, space, time, quantity, quality, thinking, relationship, indication);

4) means of transmission of separate (specific) meanings in thematic groups (identity, home and home, environment, daily life, free time and entertainment, travel, relationships with other people, health and care, education, shopping, food, service, attractions and places of visit, language, weather);

5) samples of speech interaction (they relate to the most common and used, as a rule, fixed types of

interaction, for example, in the process of making purchases and orders, search and obtain information, meetings with people, walking around the city, learning and naming time, discussion, etc.);

6) the types of texts, auditory, printed and written materials that can be or become sources of information, and their respective perception skills;

7) list of materials, the knowledge of which involves the mastery of language in socio-cultural context (cross-cultural realities, the received samples of communication, national traditions, rituals, habits, forms of expression of politeness, gestures, etc.);

8) the list of skills that the student must possess in order to compensate for the shortcomings in the knowledge of a foreign language (in the process of reading and auditory perception of foreign language speech, speaking and writing, in the process of interaction with a native speaker or a more experienced interlocutor in the language);

9) the list of skills required to study a foreign language in all types of speech activities, in working with various sources, in independent work and self-assessment[9].

## Conclusion

As with any method of learning a foreign language, the communicative method has its drawbacks. The main drawback is that it is quite difficult for a beginner to learn a foreign language to delve into the difficult grammatical basics, presented immediately in a foreign language. In addition, the following disadvantages can be identified:

Complete abandonment of the native language, which is mandatory in communicative teaching methods, can cause stress in untrained students.

Mandatory work in pairs and in a group excludes the opportunity to work with the teacher one-on-one.

The teacher using the communicative method of teaching, during the lesson can not pay enough attention and time to each pair/group.

Knowledge of a foreign language involves different types of speech activities: speaking, understanding foreign language speech by ear (listening), writing, reading and reading comprehension. Each of these types involves its own methods of working on them. Accordingly, the method used for teaching, for example, speaking, is hardly suitable for teaching writing.

Therefore, from the point of view of different tasks, any method has its weaknesses and strengths. Each of these techniques has its positive and negative sides. But when used correctly, they effectively help in language learning. Today, without knowledge of foreign languages it is difficult to find a promising high-paying job, knowledge of languages is your chance, a chance for a decent life. A communicative method opens up huge opportunities that will provide us and our children a bright future.



## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India)	= 3.117	SIS (USA)	= 0.912	ICV (Poland)	= 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE)	= 0.829	ПИИИ (Russia)	= 0.156	PIF (India)	= 1.940
GIF (Australia)	= 0.564	ESJI (KZ)	= 8.716	IBI (India)	= 4.260
JIF	= 1.500	SJIF (Morocco)	= 5.667	OAJI (USA)	= 0.350

## References:

1. (1981). *The choice of teaching methods in the secondary school*. Edited by Y. K. Babanskiy (Eds.). Moscow: Pedagogy.
2. Kolker, Y. M. (2000). *Practical methods of teaching a foreign language*. Moscow.
3. (1985). *The communicativeness of teaching in the practice schools*, under the editorship of E. I. Passov (Eds.). Moscow: Ed. Education.
4. Passov, E. I. (1985). *Communicative method of teaching foreign language speaking*. (p.208). Moscow.
5. Passov, E. I. (1991). *Communicative method of teaching foreign language speaking*. (p.223). Moscow: Education.
6. Rakhmanina, M. B. (1998). *Typology of methods of teaching foreign languages*. Moscow.
7. Lucantoni, P. (2002). *Teaching and assessing skills in English as a second language*. (p.82). Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
8. McDonough, J., & Shaw, C. (2003). *Materials and Methods in ELT: A teacher's guide*. 2nd edition. (p.280). Malden: Blackwell.
9. Richards, J. C., & Rodgers, T. S. (2001). *Approaches and Methods in Language Teaching*. (p.171). Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
10. Savignon, S. J. (2000). *Communicative language teaching*. In Byram, Michael (Eds.). *Routledge Encyclopedia of Language Teaching and Learning*. [Книга]. (pp.125-129). London: Routledge.
11. Thacker, C., & Pelteret, C. (2007). *English in Mind. Teacher's Book 1*. (p.130) Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

SOI: [1.1/TAS](#) DOI: [10.15863/TAS](#)  
**International Scientific Journal**  
**Theoretical & Applied Science**

p-ISSN: 2308-4944 (print) e-ISSN: 2409-0085 (online)

Year: 2019 Issue: 04 Volume: 72

Published: 30.04.2019 <http://T-Science.org>

QR – Issue



QR – Article



**Sayfiddin Rafiddinov**

PhD, Seniorresearcher of the Institute of Uzbek Language, Literature and Folklore of Uzbekistan Academy of Sciences, Uzbekistan. E-mail: dokma@bk.ru

## NAVAI AND KALANDARIYA

**Abstract:** The article is devoted to appearing and formation Kalandariya in artistic literature, specific features of it, and finally, its artistic interpretation in the creativity of Alisher Navai, in this article the author gives a number of new facts and serious considerations about the theme.

**Key words:** Kalandar, Kalandariya, Navai, Dervish, tarikat.

**Language:** English

**Citation:** Rafiddinov, S. (2019). Navai and Kalandariya. *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 04 (72), 521-525.

**Soi:** <http://s-o-i.org/1.1/TAS-04-72-68> **Doi:**  <https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2019.04.72.68>

### Introduction

From the beginning of the 11th century, the Kalandariya, which had a strong influence on the oral and written literature of the East people, began to appear under the influence of the “malomatiylik” sect (the sect of tarikat). Later, Jamoliddin Savaji (died in 1232) defined its principles and foundations and was regarded as the founder of this tarikat. There are different opinions in the science about the kalandariya which had undergone a very complex historical process.

### Materials and Methods

As the prof. Abdurauf Fitrat writes: “The kalandariya is a branch of Muslim sufism. This sect lasted until recently in our country” [6.]. Indeed, when we look at our classic literature, we can see that the idea and imagination of kalandariya has a certain place in the artistic creation until the first half of the XX th century.

In this case, it should be mentioned the influence of the creativity of Persian literature representatives: Hakim Sanoyi, Fakhriddin Irakiy, Farididdin Attor, Hafiz Sherozi and Jaloliddin Rumi in increasing the interest of the people to the ideology of the kalandariya, the promotion of kalandarian ghazals. Because they are artists who have a great respect for the kalandars, promote their idea and sense of the liberty, heroism and emotions.

Of course, knowing what the kalandarian is, begins with understanding the meaning of the term “kalandar”. Some people think it is a word from Arabic language, others are from Persian language, and others

are from Sanskrit language. But there is still not a definitive decision, conclusion about this.

It is unknown till today that firstly the word “kalandar” was used in which source. However, there is the suggestion in some researches that the first, mutasavvif (mystic) A. Ansari (died in 1089) could have used this word in his “Kalandarname”.

Scholars have not yet come to a conclusion about the etymology of the term “kalandar”. Indeed, according to the opinion of some scholars that the initial state of the kalandars and their views about appearing process of tarikat (sect) are relative. Even the root of the word “kalandar” and its origin from which language have been not clearly defined.

The word “qalandar” is derived from the combination of “kalan” and “andar” words. It means: “to carry the heavy load”, “under the heavy load”, or is derived from the combination of Arabic word “aqall” and Persian word “andar”, and it means “in a minor, insignificant, humble position”. This term may be nickname of majzubi solik (to have jazba) or “nickname” of soliki majzub (to have jazba) who achieved the jazba after the suluk (the way, the direction, the sect).

According to the Turkish scientist A. Ya. Uchak, the word “qalandar” has been used as the “kalantar” in Arabic, Persian and Turkish sources. Some scholars think that the word “qalandar” is derived from the Persian word “kalontar” – bigger, taller, clumsy man whose hair grew, a rugged, unbreakable wooden trunk which is propped behind the gate, or “kaletuz” or “kalet” words which mean “to invite”, “to propagandize” or from the Sanskrit word which means “out of law”, “to destroy the law”.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

According to the “G’iyosul lug’at”: “The qalandar was actually “kalandar” with an Arabic word “qaf”, in this case it means the unbreakable wooden trunk which is propped behind the gate in order to not open the door quickly. It became “kalandar” with Arabic word “qaf” in Arabic and Ajam (non-Arabic people) languages because of their disagreement. Some people called that the word “kalandar” was arabic word. It is true that it is an Arabic word. It was written in the “Xiyobon” and in the “Javohirul ulum” that the word “kalandar” was actually “g’alandar”. Kalandar, dervish (eremite) is the person who is not interested the world, lives in solitary life, mujarrad (naked), unmarried man. He sells the world for unworthy thing, and disbelief and religion are equal in his sect.

Qalandar and kallosh are called tajridand tarkahli (the anchorite).

Dictionary books such as “Haft kulzum” and “Bahori ajam”, which was commented the word “kalandar”, interpret this as a term. According to the “Haft kulzum”: the kalandar is the name of the people who are free from all official offers, records, separates from all kinds of religious practices and customs, abandons all material life contacts and distorts, destroys all worship and customs.

In the religious law and regulations of the Sankrit, the “qala” means a law, a regulation, a tradition: the “dri” means to squeeze, to cut, to be cleave. The word “dara” is derived from the verb “dri” and is used as the meaning “crack”. The word “dara” may also have entered our language through the Persian language. The compound word which was made the words “dara” and “qala”, has been using in the form of “qalandara” in the new Sankrit language. This word is used in the meaning the person who breaks the tradition and tears down the order. It is possible that this word has been translated from ancient Hindu language dravitchidato Sanskrit language.

In ancient times, one of the Indian dervishes was called the kalandar, when he married to the woman who belonged to the another tribe. This condition was considered the insult for the person who commits lawlessness to the tradition of his tribe. It is possible that this word has special meaning such as to train the the passion, to avoid the insult of other people among Iranian and Indian dervishes, that’s why it is called qalandariya among the people.

The word “kalandar” is explained in the work of the Turkish scientist Vohidi who lived in XVI th century, “Khojayi Jahonva Natijayijon”. “You said that the qalandar is the sect, but you do not know it. With the blessing of Allah, I can explicitly write down the qalandariya and make clear the secrets of the letters. Indeed, the qalandar consists of five letters; it envelopes to the meaning of qalandar. The first letter is “qaf”. The goal from the qaf is contentment. When you fed up your passion with your hand labor, you will

be thankful to the God. You will avoid much from your desires if you are content with a small thing. You will wick in your own state; you don’t be ready in the wealth and state of the people. If you have an illusion of unbelief in your heart, you will drive it with istigfar (asking from God to excuse his/her faults). Then you will enter “Kuhioqof” of your body and find the treasury of the content, there is not frailty in it. Because the Sultan (Muhammad sallallaahualaihi wasallam) said: “The contentment is the unfinished treasury”. There are many words about contentment, and their features are unlimited. I edit from this sea and write it.

The second letter is “lom”. The purpose from “lom” is compassionate and gentle. It is considered to get accustomed the compassionate and gentle after abolishing the fear in the word, in the verb. It is to treat with kindness and gentleness to everyone according to his/her degree, giving share to them from your gentleness.

The third letter is “nun”. The purpose from “nun” is blame. Namely, forgiving sins every time, being court servant in front of the God, bending to the ground, spitting tears and cursing, demanding forgiveness from Allah Almighty.

The fourth letter is “dol”. The purpose from “dol” is a sign for good. It is to testify to the good passions of one’s self or of another person.

The fifth letter is “ro”. The purpose from “ro” isto see unusual things. Namely, if a person does something secretly, or evidently, he/she will do as he/she sees the Allah. He considers the Allah as the controller for every work and every action, do the shame”.

The work of Xatibi Farsi “Manokibi Jamoliddin Savi” is one of the most important works of poetry, which describes the principles of qalandariya, the rules of modesty, and pyres (the head of the religious sect). It also explains the word “kalandar” and is interpreted the “qaf” as contentment, “lom” as gentleness, “nun” as repentance, “dol” as honesty and “re” as difficulties. It also addresses the ayats and hadiths in order to interpret existing meanings. For example, the author interprets the first letter of the word “qaf” in the word “qalandar”: The first letter of the word is called “qaf” for the person who exaggerates from this meaning (from Qalandariya). The content is very necessary for that person; in the beginning this meaning is obligatory. Whoever does not know the contentment, should not exaggerate from the poverty. The contentment becomes rich the person, it is better than a treasure of pearl.

As we have seen above, the author points out the necessity of the contentment for the qalandars with the letter “qaf”. “Different attitudes and comments were given to the term “qalandar” at different times. There are similar and different aspects of interpretation and analysis, and it should be considered. In our modern dictionaries, the word

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

“qalandar” is interpreted as follows: 1. Religion. The dervish, who reads religious ghazals and propagates the Muslim religion, is a wanderer of the world, lives in solitary life, dervish. 2. *In portable meaning*. A person who abandons the world, lives in solitary life, zahid. 3. It is the name of one of the Uzbek folklore musics. 4. Kalandar. (the name of the men).

The kalandar expresses a specific meaning in religious - educative poems:

1. The kalandar is the majzub who lives in solitary life, for the peace, can say the truth of Shariat, the truth of the word, and search God, the Allah and truth. He is the man who pretends God's truth over all things, and does not know who he is, although he seems to be incapable of religious worship;

2. The kalandar in the poetry of Sufism is a passionate believer of Allah. He is a drunken man who has been in a state of frailty and is burning in his love for Allah. This term is often used in Persian poetry in the works of A. Ansari, H. Sanoyi, F. Attor, in the Uzbek poetry in the works of Navai, Mashrab and Nodira;

3. The kalandar is a prominent member of the kalandariya, who is often in different to religious ceremonies except the responsibility, is often unmarried, travels alone and lives for the charity.

4. The armed dervishes who guard the caravan of pilgrim, are also referred as qalandars in certain period of time.

This word served a synonym for the term “dervish” and “devona” in India, Iran, and Central Asia.

Many opinions about the closeness and the distinctive features between kalandars (eremites) with sufi, dervish, malomatiy have been stated in the scientific publications.

The kalandar has the following spiritual figures as the lyrical hero in our classic literature: The first one is a beloved kalandars. These are real true lovers of Allah. They are mercy and compassionate owners, who do not give attention to the external devastation for the prosperity of inside. The second one is majzub (to have jazba) kalandars gravestones. They are the beneficiaries who have been described in narratives, manoqib, tazkira (antology), and in some poetic works. The third one is the qalandars who can not be cleansed of ujb (bragging) and hypocrite. Alisher Navai criticized by this group of kalandars, who do not conform the requirements of the modesty and only live for the beggary in his work “Mahbub ul-qulub” [5. 32.]. Babur wrote in the “Baburname” that he had stumbled over the grave of Shahboz kalandar who tried to distract the people from the religion [2. 202.]. Abdurakhman Jami called them as “the false qalandars who take off the responsibilities of Islam” [4. 7.], an Iranian scientist, Dr. Ali Asg'ar accused them the Halabi drunkenness and the consumption of marijuana [1. 53.].

However, described kalandars in the Uzbek

folklore and in written literature, are exemplary people in many aspects. For example, the kalandars in the works “Alpomish”, “Shirin and Shakar”, “Rustamkhon”, “Orzigul” and “Malikai ayyor” (“Cunning princess”), are embodied as the heroes who are faithful for the goodness and nobility, as well as can realize the ideal dreams of the people.

Even though the influence of the qalandarian was not in large scale in the creativity of the representatives of the Turkic literature, who lived before Navai, it existed. The bytes which have kalandarian (eremiterian) spirit and melody, are many in the works of poets such as Hafiz Kharezmii, Khujandiy, Yusuf Amiri, Sayyid Ahmad, Sayyid Qosimi, Khaydar Kharazmiy, Lutfi, Gadoi, Atoyi. Although they did not directly propagandize the truths of the tarikat (sect) of kalandariya, they described in kalandarian way the excitement views of the liberty of the spirits, frailty, the truth, love distresses. Hafiz Kharezmii wrote in one of the ghazals:

*Hofizo, rindu qalandarvashu qallos o'lg'il,  
Chun bu atvorda yo'q mansabsanji islom.  
(Be eremiterian and kallos, because there is not any grade)*

Alisher Navai also gave great importance to the eremiterian reality and symbols. The great poet deeply impressed the demands of the kalandarian principles, he gave a special attention to its conditions of modesty. The ghazal, which begins with the rows and was entered divan “Badoeul-vasat” of Navai, “Qirqiberdi koshin ul bodaparast xudroy” was written on the basis of the conquest and conceptions of kalandarian from the beginning to end. The person who does not know the doctrine of Sufism, the modesties of the kalandarian, can not grasp the subtle meanings and gestures in the ghazal. It is not surprise that the poet discusses about the kalandarian at the definition of love:

*Ishq aro poku qalandarlik kerak,  
Shu'la baxrida samandarlik kerak.  
(The pure kalandarian needs for love)*

The attentive poet also saw and watched a lot of majzub kalandars (to have jazba), trouble some poor people who called themselves as kalandar, greedy, dissolute person who sells own sect, in the life of the poet. That is why he divides the kalandars into two categories and mercilessly criticizes the false kalandars.

As you know, the appearance and apparel of the kalandars were unusual. They also shaved their hair, beard and mustache, eyebrows. Because shaving hair, eyebrows and hair was the tradition of the earlier method of the teachings of the qalandariya. They used to wear special to'ns (chapans), rag, kuloh (cone cap of dervishes) with the flannel wool, and various brassy decorations - rings, bracelets. They read the ghazals in the theme about the kalandarian with their hands on the crook, kachkul (the dish of dervishes) in their shovel.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

Sometimes, they wore “cunning” and “sarbaz” (private soldier) dresses, sometimes covered with fur, woolen clothes, and even the leopard and tiger skins.

Navai depicts the kalandars with their particular action and appearance. He wrote about the poet Mir Lavand in “Majolis un-nafois”: “He is worldly person. He was kalandar”, he wrote about Khoja Abdulkadir who was one of the officials of Mironshah Mirza, who escaped from the wrath of Amir Temur: “He was the qalandar, panhandled him self and used to move from one place to another”. Navai makes with this word “One day the community of kalandars come to Hamadon, and there is a brilliant guy among them, and he has love...” words which have different meanings, such as kalandarpesha (generous eremite), kalandar mashrab (eremite like a demented), kalandarvash, kalandarsifat (like a eremite), kalandarxona (eremiter’s place)

The image of Haydar qalandar was figured in 37th qit’ain “Favouid ul-kibar” of the poet. He wears the tiger skin like the kalandars, has crookin his hands and walks in the markets. Hasanhoja Nisari gives information about his kalandarian in his tazkira (antology) “Muzakkiri ahbob” that Amir Haydar is one of the relatives of Navai and he “...chooses way of loneliness and singleness, and walks in “kalandarian way”, puts on the frailty dress, becomes a “flag” in thepoverty and the poorness, plays the poorness “kettledrum” under turning verandah.

The poet criticizes the hypocrite zahid (praises to Allah and lives alone) on the 14th qit’a of the “G’aroyib us-sig’ar”, shows the ways to get rid of the blame and to recover:

*Ko’rsang, ey zohid, muqomirvash  
qalandarpeshae,  
Bo’lma ko’p mashg’ulu dunyo shug’lidan qil  
ijtinob.*

*Dona o’ynab vajhin isor etsang andin  
yaxshikim,*

*Evurub tasbihu yormoq sudin etkaysen hisob.*

*(Zahid, if you see generous kalandar, do not want more wealth of the world, if you play gambling and share profit from it, this will be better than the coins with praying.)*

While we are reading the qit’a, the image of the two men embodies in front of our eyes against each other: one of them is the hypocrite zahid who praises; the second of them is the kalandar who is apathyfor the grief of the world. The poet shows magnificent nature of kalandar to the zahid as the sample. Although the gambler kalandardoes pus, there is not hypocrite on him. He pours out everything. Zahid (praises to Allah and lives alone) is a hypocrite. Although he praises, he wants to gather the “world”. For this reason, the poet says to the zahid (praises to Allah and lives alone): “when you see the gambler kalandars, be edify them, not give attention to the wealth of the world, it is better to play gambling, and

*share the profits to the people than to count the profits from the coins with praying”.*

It is understood from the meaning of the two qit’as that Navai knew well the lifestyle of the qalandars in his period and clearly illustrated it.

The great poet deeply understood and comprehended the requirements of the qalandarian principles, he also took a special attention its conditions of modesty. The following ghazal from his divan “Badoe’ul-vasat” gives particular concepts and imaginations about the qalandar and the qalandarian.

*Qirqib erdi qoshin ul bodaparasti xudroy,  
Toza chiqmish, ne ajab, gar desam oni yangi oy.*

*Qirqqandin iki-uch kun o’tubon bo’lmish edi.  
Uylakim jangi pay etkaylar ikki dilkash yoy.*

*Yopti g’avvosi qazo har biriga mushkin qavs,  
Otg’ali kirpik o’qin jon bilan ko’nglum sari, voy.*

*Koshki xattig’a etkurmagay erdi poki  
Kim, bu to’ti bo’lur ul ko’zgu bila bolqushoy.*

*Lo’li o’lmoq tong emas, bor esa shahlarg’a  
havas,  
Gar bu yuz ko’zqusiga ilgi bo’lur oyinasoy.*

*Ne ajab, bo’lsa erim kunji qalandarxona,  
Kim, qalandarvash erur ul sanami beparvoy.*

*Ey Navoiy, etilib qoshi aning, shukur deykim,  
Husni qasrig’a ayon bo’ldi yana toqi namoy.*

*(The kalandars shaved their beards, hairs and they like as new moon, ifyou see the place of kalandars, like a kalandar who iscareless to the wealth of the world lives here. Their face is wish for shahs (kings))*

The poet pointed to shaving eyebrows tendency of the kalandars in the ghazal, expressed his poetic relations to the feelings with “kalandarvash”, “sanami beparvoy” with helping them. In kalandaria, shaving the beard and eyebrows was a specific habit. But shaving the beard and eyebrows was also used as a symbolic habit. In this case, every qalandar was not obliged to shave his beard and mustache and eyebrows. It also was mentioned about itin the book belonged to the Jaloli dervishes.

Navai describes the image of addict kalandar in a negative way in above mentioned story, he described love when he talked about “the quality of the love valley”. He mentioned that the purity and kalandarian would be one of the qualities of lover:

*Ishq aro poku qalandarlik kerak,  
Shu’la bag’rida samandarlik kerak.  
(The pure kalandarian needs for love) [5. 194.]*

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

### Conclusion

In the period of Navai, there were mahallas, places and streets which the kalandars lived, in Herat. Xondamir informed in his work "Makorimul-axloq" that he was constructed the pool in the makhalla of qalandars and the Qalandaron bridge, as well as them asjidi qalandaron mosque in the "Bogi Zog'on".

These historical reasons confirm that the poet knew well the life of qalandars, their traditions and modesty of tarikat, sect. In conclusion, the idea, image and opinions linked with kalandarian are existed in the creative works of Navai, knowing them helps to us to deeply understand the outlook of the poet.

### References:

1. Ali Asg'ar Halabiy (1367). *Shinoxiti irfon va orifoni eroniy*. Tehron: Al fudo.
2. Bobur (1989). *Boburnoma*. Toshkent: Yulduzcha.
3. Bertel's, E. E. (1965). *Sufizm i sufiyskaya literatura*. Moskva: Nauka.
4. Jomiy, A. (1370). *Nafohat uns-min hazroti-quds*. Tehron: Al fudo.
5. Navoiy, A. (1966). *Asarlar. 15 jildlik. 13-jild*. Toshkent: Fan.
6. Fitrat, A. (1991). *Mashrab*. Turkiston gazetasi, 12 iyul.
7. Xondamir (1967). *Makorim ul-axloq*. Toshkent: Fan.
8. Haqulloq, I. (2019). *Mushohada yog'dusi. II*. Toshkent: Tafakkur.
9. Haqulloq, I. (2011). *Navoiyga qaytish-2*. Toshkent: Fan.
10. Haqulloq, I. (2018). *Talant - jasorat javhari*. Toshkent: Muharrir.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

SOI: [1.1/TAS](#) DOI: [10.15863/TAS](#)  
**International Scientific Journal**  
**Theoretical & Applied Science**

p-ISSN: 2308-4944 (print) e-ISSN: 2409-0085 (online)

Year: 2019 Issue: 04 Volume: 72

Published: 30.04.2019 <http://T-Science.org>

QR – Issue



QR – Article



**Shavkat Bairamovich Babayev**  
Competitor of the chair «Finance and taxes»  
of Tashkent state economic university

## PERFECTION OF METHODOLOGY OF FORECASTING OF TAX REVENUES FROM PHYSICAL PERSONS: FOREIGN EXPERIENCE

**Abstract:** Application of tax planning consists in qualitative organizational and control activity of tax departments for maintenance of timely and full receipt of taxes and tax collections in budgetary system of any country. Planning problems is not only maintenance of receipts in budgetary system of the country of taxes and tax collections, but also increase in tax revenues, and maintenance of their stability on the basis of an establishment of incomes of tax bearers. Without preliminary drawing up of the forecast it is impossible to generate the plan. It is known that tax incomes make an essential share of budgetary incomes, at all stages of social and economic development of the Republic of Uzbekistan, especially in the conditions of developing economic lifting of the country where a problem of achievement of equation of the budget, maintenance of financing of target programs, achievements of steady economic growth it is necessary for achievement of steady economic growth. In modern conditions of perfection, modernization of tax system of the Republic of Uzbekistan, change of priorities of a spent state tax policy there is a transformation of system of tax forecasting and planning at the macro level, consisting in use of new forms and methods of drawing up of forecasts and plans of receipt of obligatory payments in the budget. Mechanisms of realization of tax forecasting and planning represent two processes depending from each other, and process of tax forecasting precedes process of tax planning.

Forecasting and planning of taxes is necessary for considering as the coordinated adaptive mechanism in which decisions on the basis of the issued indicators are corrected and ways of their perfection are reconsidered at constant control and supervision over occurring changes. Base of regulation of tax forecasting are norms of budgetary process. Tax forecasting acts is as one of the main tasks in work of the public authorities which decision is definition of structure and volumes of receipt of tax incomes in the budget, process of their formation and modification of the legislation, working out of plans of mobilization of tax revenues and the further execution of the plan. In article tax forecasting of the Republic of Uzbekistan is considered, processes by definition of tax base under the tax, dynamics calculation on their receipt are considered.

**Key words:** tax forecasting, budgetary process, tax planning, the state budget, the financial policy.

**Language:** English

**Citation:** Babayev, S. B. (2019). Perfection of methodology of forecasting of tax revenues from physical persons: foreign experience. *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 04 (72), 526-531.

**Soi:** <http://s-o-i.org/1.1/TAS-04-72-69> **Doi:**  <https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2019.04.72.69>

### Introduction.

Tax planning is carried out on the basis of the fact sheet about tax revenues, tax bases, at level of collecting and look-ahead values of macroeconomic indicators [1]. The purpose of planning of tax revenues is attraction of the maximum volume of taxes and tax collections in the budget of the country and the level of tax planning consists in an independent estimation of the admissible tax revenues necessary for performance economically of tasks. Tax planning at the state level is base for forecasting of social and economic processes in the country. Research and the further development of forms and

methods of tax planning are caused by necessity of improvement of quality of budgetary planning [2]. For achievement of tax planning at the state level performance of such problems as maintenance of execution of a profitable part of budgets of all levels is necessary; increase in tax revenues according to a gain of tax bases, instead of at the expense of increase of rates, and also at the expense of favorable influence economic and social factors; maintenance of a continuity and stability of tax revenues within a fiscal year; use of various management methods on maximization of tax revenues in practical activities.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

In modern conditions when the major is the problem of deficiency of the state budget of the country, a choice of a well-founded financial policy at state level many countries pass to intermediate term financial planning, including the tax. Quality of planning of tax revenues within the limits of formation of intermediate term financial plans of all levels substantially defines reliability of intermediate term budgets. Be real исполнимым the budget, which forecasting of incomes, including tax can only, considers communications between economic growth, a tax and financial policy, is based on the scientific approach, the analysis and reasonable use of foreign experience [3]. The analysis of foreign practice of tax planning has shown that instability of economic growth, absence of a full complex of standard documents cause complexity of tax planning on separate types of tax with a view of maximization of tax revenues in the country budget. There is an objective requirement of working out of new approaches to planning of separate types of tax, methodical recommendations about realization of such approaches with a view of increase of objectivity and accuracy of the forecast. The well-founded techniques as much as possible considering all factors of calculation of the certain tax, is based on the scientific approach and modern information base which promotes real execution of the budget under tax incomes. About 30 % of tax revenues in the budget of the country from subjects of the Republic of Uzbekistan provides the tax to incomes of physical persons that does rather actual a problem of working out of scientific approaches and methodical recommendations about planning of the given tax. Questions of planning of the tax to incomes of physical persons it is extremely important, but absence of methodical recommendations about planning of the given tax where the importance of the taxation of physical persons and its planning is not to the full accented. Financial and tax departments carry out forecasting of tax revenues in the budgetary system which accuracy influences financing of target programs of social and economic development and priority state projects, and also the planning of tax incomes providing realization of a principle of stability of tax system, coordination of economic processes according to purposes of industrial development, and also influence on state regulation of economy [4]. As has shown the analysis of a tax policy of foreign countries, the greatest urgency is got by the scientifically-methodical approach to an all-round estimation of a tax policy, the partner taxation, mutual relations of the state and economic subjects which is realized in system of tax forecasting and planning, and also a problem of improvement of quality and perfection of the given system and development of its information support. Researches have shown that look-ahead researches in the USA have three levels:

- Forecasting in state regulation system (federal and states; local authorities)
- Intra firm forecasting;
- Commercial forecasting.

Council of economic advisers, Board of governors of Federal Reserve System (FRS) and Is administrative-budgetary management (ABM) are the basic organizations which are engaged in the main look-ahead workings out in the government of the USA. Council of economic advisers as the special body helping the president in economic problems, taxation questions etc., is engaged as well in forecasting of economic processes [5]. In the USA strategic tax forecasting and planning in which course the main indicators of development of economy come to light, plans at different levels are developed and possible negative factors of development of economic subjects come to light [6]. Within the limits of strategic tax forecasting ways of more favorable moving and capital investments not only in the state, but also in other countries are defined. The account of a considerable quantity of factors, major of which - tax is thus necessary. Tax forecasting and planning allows reaching at the minimum expenses of the maximum result. The purpose of tax planning is not the increase in tax payments since it assumes reception of high financial results at minimization of tax expenses. Tax forecasting assumes the decision of financial problems without minimization of taxes, namely attraction of new investors and creditors, prevention of high level of the taxation because of abnormality of carrying out of transactions. The international tax forecasting and planning is a legitimate mechanism of a tax policy on macro- and the micro levels which primary goal is decrease in expenses by creation of effective administrative structure. As the following problem for tax bearers and tax department's complexity of process of the taxation therefore there are problems on application of schemes of optimization of the taxation and on training of tax employees acts [7]. There is an erroneous opinion that tax systems of foreign countries are simpler. Now the tendency of their complication is observed. The tax code of the USA throughout last 30 years has increased on volume in 2 times, in Canada - in 3 times, in the Netherlands - in 2 times [8,9,10].

On taxation level it is possible to allocate three groups of the countries, where level среднелюшевых incomes in the Republic of Uzbekistan lower, than in the advanced countries. The greatest share in structure of incomes the budget of foreign countries is occupied with receipts from surtax - 10 % of gross national product, despite constant decrease in rates. For example, over the last 10 years in Austria rates have decreased from 62 % to 50 %, Belgium - from 72 % to 57 %, France - from 65 % to 54 %). Also there is a reduction of number of steps of a scale of the tax to incomes of physical persons (for example, in Austria - with 10 to 5, France - with 12 to 4, Belgium - from



## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

12 to 7, Spain - from 34 to 17). Now changes in an order of the taxation of profit of the organizations one of which is decrease in tax rates are observed. For example, last years in Belgium rates are lowered with 45 to 39 %, Denmark - with 50 to 34 %, France - with 45 to 33 %, Germany - with 56 to 45 %, Sweden - with 52 to 28 %, in the USA with 45 to 35 %). Taxes are of great importance in working out economic and social policy of EU Member States that proves to be true a high share of tax incomes in gross national product. The least share of tax incomes in the general structure Sweden – 55.2 % has, the greatest - Portugal – 55.2 % [11-14]. Tax forecasting and planning in foreign countries is the basic tool for achievement of definite purposes. Tax forecasting and planning in foreign countries at macro level acts as the original economic market which is capable to operate a social production, influencing its structure and dynamics, and also to accelerate scientific and technical progress. At micro level, tax forecasting and planning allows to supervise business activity, promoting that, and national economy development. Balance maintenance in foreign trade activities the purpose branch aspect by means of tools of tax forecasting and planning, ideas of minimization of expenses are formed at production and directions of increase of competitive advantages of the domestic organizations in the world market. Tax forecasting and planning allows introducing protectionism, providing economic independence to the economic enterprises.

As taxes are positioned as the basic part of public revenues which are a financial control lever by economy through the State expenditure. The major tools of tax system are tax privileges which represent a way of decrease in tax loading through tax planning. For example, in Germany tax privileges actively receive the firms investing in east earths and on border with them. The Ruhr area in which steel industry, ancient quarters of a city of Luebeck, restored by firms are developed uses tax privileges. Modern industries develop in countryside. Introduction of new taxes is frequently used for regulation of tax revenues. So, in Germany the tax to acetic acid receipts from which were much less expense connected with its collection has been imposed. The tax pursued regulating economic target and consequently has remained in Germany till now, bringing in the state budget considerable means. The increase in level of taxes is capable to solve and social problems. For example, in Germany the number non-smoking because of sharp increase in the excise at tobacco, in difference from a policy of carrying out on various propagation of harm of smoking has much more decreased [15-17]. By means of taxes in the countries of Europe environmental problems dare also. As an example it is possible to name use of catalysts in motor industry of Germany. With a view of improvement of ecological conditions in Germany for the cars equipped with catalysts, the tax and a duty have been considerably

reduced by the gasoline necessary for such cars. Simultaneously with the given measure the excise has been considerably increased by the gasoline containing various harmful additives (for example, lead) and applied in old engines that has allowed to refund expenses on catalysts. Development of the international cooperation, world economy globalization, standardization of economic processes and information support have led to necessity of unification of tax laws, the mutual coordination and streamlining of tax systems. In the countries which have laid down for self the aim of creation of uniform economic space (legislation unification under the VAT in "the Common market" countries), harmonization reaches before unification of tax laws and tax modes, in other states development goes in the area of the conclusion of bilateral and multilateral international agreements on removal of traffic walls, about avoidance of the double taxation of incomes and capitals, unification of separate norms and modes of national tax systems [18-20].

**Research methods.** At article writing methods of the analysis and synthesis of results of research of foreign experience of forecasting of tax revenues from physical persons have been used.

**Discussion of results.** The analysis of some factors of systems of tax regulation of economy operating in world practice has allowed allocating four types of tax systems:

- Based on necessity of satisfaction of nation-wide requirements at the expense of state budget means (in this case taxes are considered as the major source of a covering of nation-wide needs, for example, in Sweden);

- Requirements of concrete manufacturers of the goods based on maintenance and services (the tax policy is thus directed on economic activities stimulation, instead of on the expected income of the state budget, as the brightest representative of this system the Netherlands serves);

- Developing as the major tool of maintenance of the state interests and interests of manufacturers of the goods and services; an example - the USA and Great Britain (England, Ireland, the New Wales, Scotland);

- Systems of the unified tax account which are used by the governments for monitoring and control over economy (France, Germany, a number of developing countries).

Revealing of tools and directions of influence of tax systems of the leading countries of the world on economy gives the chance to assert that for optimum collection of taxes the system of privileges and encouragements concerning real industrial and commercial activity has great value. In this connection the sizes of tax rates, contrary to the established opinion, are of secondary importance that confirms the fact of preference of investment of sectors of the market highly assessed with taxes to "tax oases». Even for the companies which are not carrying out any

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

activity in the country of the site but only operating the actives, branches serving or supervising activity in other countries, practically in all developed countries provide serious tax privileges (first of all a delay from the taxation of incomes). The companies with the international scale of the activity use the greatest spectrum of the tax privileges provided by the international trading agreements, considerably surpassing preferential modes of free tax zones. The policy of tax planning concerns tools of tax regulation being a component of internal planning of firm also; from this point of view all taxes paid by firm are considered as its own costs which, in search of optimum, are planned in several variants, with various level of tax obligations (thus most ample opportunities for tax planning, in the form of privileges, discounts, deductions and etc. exist at calculation of the tax from profit). As a result - payment by the enterprise of taxes on established by the law of the rate is an unusual occurrence and testifies to bad statement of tax planning.

Disclosing of the mechanism of tax schemes, with reference to business practice of the leading countries, an arsenal of concrete means and methods of their realization has allowed telling the following:

- Norms of amortization serve as the tool of the state economic policy: raised or accelerated - stimulate a gain of capital investments and the economic activities revival, limited - freeze the begun buildings and lead to outflow of capitals abroad (as in foreign practice as depreciation charges i.e. to reference on the cost price of made production so-called, "capital" expenses - on scientific researchers are subject to write-off also, on preparation for the beginning of industrial activity, "know-how" and etc.);

- In all developed countries the serious privileges allowing private business the big share of the profits to capitalize in the form of depreciation charges and funds operate;

- The tax authorities do not demand, that amortization charge in the internal industrial account of the company corresponded to operating limits which however it is necessary to adhere at calculation of the taxable income;

- Limits of depreciation charges are established or in the form of annual interest rates, or in the form of deadlines of amortization with write-off of cost of fixed capital by one of next ways) in regular intervals during all term of amortization;

- A method of the semi-annual convention: with the greatest share of write-off in the first or last year's equipment uses (the accelerated amortization is supposed only for actives and the means used in activity, connected with extraction have arrived the company).

Consideration of the basic directions of practice of the taxation of individual incomes of the population operating in the developed countries has allowed

revealing at them common features. So at high rates of the taxation and full "transparency" of incomes of the tax bearer the taxable base is treated as a net profit with application of wide system of discounts and privileges. They stimulates as demographic parameters of a society, regulating marriage viability of the population, and the small and average business rendering services to the population, through the mechanism of offset of their cost, reducing taxable base of surtax of the population. Discounts and privileges reducing taxes encourage expenditure for preservation of the health (in the biggest degree expenses on stomatology treatment), acquisition of real estate, subjects of long using. Expenses for transportation to a service place are besides compensated, the maintenance of children etc. Special stimulus operates at reception of incomes in agrarian and small-scale business (in France). The tax system in the considered countries at the taxation of physical persons pursues not only the fiscal purpose - fund raising in the state income, but has also a strongly pronounced regulating social orientation. It is obvious that practice of the taxation of individual incomes of the population of the named countries promote creation of a certain positive spirit of the population which considers not favorable not to pay taxes. The considerable role is played thus by official publications of the full reporting of the state about target use of taxes. In our opinion, this circumstance is a serious argument in social moods of a society in business of maintenance of profitableness of the budget of the country that testifies to considerable possibilities of tax system in maintenance of normalization of a social climate in the country.

Application of trend methods of forecasting on the basis of experimental check with changing levels of receipt of tax payments of physical persons on a concrete example of Japan, has allowed to receive three variants of the forecast: the forecast on an average pure gain (56. 38 bln. yens in 2000); on mid-annual rate of a gain (63. 57 bln. yens) and on a dale of taxes in a total sum of incomes of the state budget (61. 38 bln. yens). Last variant taking into account the minimum sum of squares of deviations of theoretical results of forecasting from real receipts of taxes has shown the most authentic data in comparison with other methods of trend forecasting. However, as shows experiment, forecasts of budgetary incomes should be corrected taking into account the expert estimations, allowing considering not only constantly operating factors in the field of the taxation, but also casual unforeseen factors (political, ideological, social, etc.) As the example confirming justice of this position the Russian crisis of the August, 1998 which has overturned all expectations from tax revenues by the end of the year serves. With reference to Russia, it is possible to tell that now similar forecasts are inconvenient because of reconstructed system of the taxation and enough high inflation in the country. The

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

monitoring system developed by us and the forecast of monthly tax revenues with reference to the Russian specificity has special practical value as monthly control of tax revenues does not practice now Russia. The technique offered by the author with diagnostics of factors modifying the planned tax revenues can be used by working out of measures directed on increase of efficiency of tax system in Russia which are in our opinion defined by following directions:

- Incomes of the taxation of physical persons should become the basic source of replenishment of the state budget;
- The taxation system should have progressive character, i.e. the norm of the tax should increase with income growth;
- The taxation system should have strongly pronounced social character;
- Maintenance of simplicity and availability of calculation of tax payments not only to tax departments, but also to tax bearers;
- Reduction of number of taxes and essential simplification of procedures of their collection;
- The general decrease in tax burden;
- Support of the manufacturers working on the consumer market;
- Granting of tax privileges for is export - the focused branches;
- Tax stimulation of capital investments and investment activity, including foreign investors;

- Introduction of the advanced systems of charge of amortization for the purpose of maintenance of self-financing of capital investments;

- Taxation strengthening for using resources and real estate, increase of a share of the property and ground taxation;

- Expansion of use of the mechanism of investment tax crediting for business development;

- Radical reduction of quantity of tax privileges with abolition of individual privileges;

- Full and definitive liquidation of the customs privileges not provided by the legislation, causing damage to interests of national manufacture;

- Creation of the conditions providing impossibility and profitableness of evasion from tax payments.

Certainly, on realization of such transformations in tax sphere of Russia a lot of time is required.

### Conclusions.

Experience of foreign countries is necessary for perfection, modernization of tax system of Republic of Uzbekistan. However it is possible to tell with confidence of the Republic of Uzbekistan possesses sufficient potential for reorganization of tax system for the purpose of its optimum adaptation to economic activities conditions, and introduction of modern methods of monitoring and forecasting of the tax revenues approved in world tax practice.

### References:

1. Morgenshtern, O., & Neumann, J. (1970). *Theory of games and economic behavior*. (p.708). Moscow: Nauka.
2. Alecsandrova, I. J. (2003). *Formation and development of tax administration in transitive economy of Russia*. The dissertation author's abstract on competition of science degrees Ph.D. (p.24). Rostov-on-Don.
3. Alekhin, V. V. (2000). *Century of Century Institutional systems of the taxation in transitive economy*. The dissertation author's abstract on competition science degrees Ph.D. (p.24). Rostov-on-Don.
4. Alekhin, S. N., & Chernov, V. V. (2009). Tax forecasting at a problem stage of development of economy. *Tax policy and practice*, № 3, pp.32-37.
5. Paskachev, A. B., Sadygov, F. K., Mishin, V. I., & Saakjan, R. A. (2004). *Analys and planning of tax revenues: The theory and tactics*. (p.232). Moscow: Economic-legal literature publ.
6. Astapov, K. L. (2002). The new of a tendency in budgetary and a tax policy. *Finance publ.*, № 10, p.19.
7. Astafeva, E. V., & Saakan, R. A. (2007). Tax revenue: short-term forecasting for a basis econometric models. *Tax policy and practice*, № 4, pp.22-25.
8. Ashmarina, E. (2003). Some problems of the modern tax right of Russia. *State and the right publ.*, № 3, pp.50-57.
9. Balatsky, E. V. (2000). Reccecling and tax burden. *Economy and mathematical methods*, T. 36, № 1, p.3.
10. Balatsky, E. V. (2003). Invariance of the fiscal points of Laffer. *World economy and the international relations*, № 6, pp.62-71.
11. Balatsky, E. V. (1997). Laffer effects and financial criteria of economic activities. *World economy and the international relations*, № 11, pp.31-43.

**Impact Factor:**

<b>ISRA (India)</b>	<b>= 3.117</b>	<b>SIS (USA)</b>	<b>= 0.912</b>	<b>ICV (Poland)</b>	<b>= 6.630</b>
<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE)</b>	<b>= 0.829</b>	<b>PIHHI (Russia)</b>	<b>= 0.156</b>	<b>PIF (India)</b>	<b>= 1.940</b>
<b>GIF (Australia)</b>	<b>= 0.564</b>	<b>ESJI (KZ)</b>	<b>= 8.716</b>	<b>IBI (India)</b>	<b>= 4.260</b>
<b>JIF</b>	<b>= 1.500</b>	<b>SJIF (Morocco)</b>	<b>= 5.667</b>	<b>OAJI (USA)</b>	<b>= 0.350</b>

12. Bankhaeva, F. H. (1999). Modern concept of taxation and their influence on reforming of tax system. *Taxes, №3*, p.15.
13. Barulin, S. V. (1996). Tax as the tool of state regulation of economy. *Finance, № 1*, pp.25 -29.
14. Barulin, S. V., & Makrushin, A. V. (2002). Tax privilege as an element of the taxation and the tax policy tool. *Finance, №2*, pp.39-42.
15. Berg, O. V. (2003). Organization of budgetary relations in municipal unions (the theory, methodology, practice). the dissertation author's abstract on competition science degrees of Ph.D. (p.24). Voronezh.
16. Bersenev, L. P. (2001). Problem of evasion from payment of taxes it is actual not only in our country. *The Tax bulletin, № 5*, pp.36-39.
17. Betina, T. A. (2005). About use and efficiency automated cameral tax control. *Tax bulletin, № 7*, pp.78-84.
18. Blaug, M. (1994). Economic thought in a retrospective show. Trans. from English, 4 izd. (p.720). Moscow: Ltd. Business.
19. Bobrova, A. V., & Golovetsky, A. (2005). Organization and planning of tax process. (p.320). Moscow: Publishing house "Examination".
20. Borovikova, E. V. (2008). Theoretical and methodical aspects of definition of the purposes and quality of tax and budgetary planning. *Finance and the credit, № 5*, pp.23-28.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

SOI: [1.1/TAS](#) DOI: [10.15863/TAS](#)

## International Scientific Journal Theoretical & Applied Science

p-ISSN: 2308-4944 (print) e-ISSN: 2409-0085 (online)

Year: 2019 Issue: 04 Volume: 72

Published: 30.04.2019 <http://T-Science.org>

QR – Issue



QR – Article



Dilfuza Jamahedovna Mamatqulova  
student,  
Tashkent Institute of Finance

SECTION 30. Philosophy.  
UDC 101.1

## GLOBALIZATION AND CIVILIZATION: PROBLEMS AND TASKS

**Abstract:** In this article today in the ongoing process of globalization and civilization for a few circuits, specific features. In addition, during the current period of globalization and its different civilization, and civilization of globalization and its impact on the lives of people and society combine to cover such issues.

**Key words:** civilization, forms of civilization, globalization, development, intellectual potential, integration, science, technology, communications, crisis.

**Language:** English

**Citation:** Mamatqulova, D. J. (2019). Globalization and civilization: problems and tasks. *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 04 (72), 532-535.

**Soi:** <http://s-o-i.org/1.1/TAS-04-72-70> **Doi:**  <https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2019.04.72.70>

### Introduction

It is known that the process of globalization, first of all, engross associated with its business activities in almost all areas and continue to move deeper into the country. A person's lifestyle associated with each work, first of all, a direct product of the human mind. However, this process is developing rapidly spread come, the human body through the discerned by its positive and negative aspects. This is a process that every human has become a direct participant. It was also the case in some areas. Globalization process of political, social, cultural and scientific spheres of human life and society by studying its impact, positive or negative side.

### Materials and Methods

Today, it is not globalization movement who believe in science, engineering, technology, human factors, such as the intellectual potential of the "fruits" of humanity, and they are still the same today will make opportunities for development and the effects of spiritual practice to express the essence of civilization. Human factors driving this globalization of today's civilization. Now, the various processes of the collision between the civilizations the field. Although it took place in different areas of civilizations in human history, none of them today are not related to the ongoing process of globalization. This can be explained as follows:

First, past civilizations, the local situation of various sectors. They later spread to other areas, or the

area was a huge success with the passage of time has influenced the development of other industries. As a result, the integration process is occurring. However, it is necessary for a certain period of time. The current global civilization. He is unlimited and includes all areas. Thus, regardless of which continent location on the edge of the world in science, engineering and technologies achievements, inventions and discoveries quickly spread to other regions of the world with mass demonstrations.

Second, past civilizations, its size and the amount is so limited. It is science, culture and other areas of their achievements in all sectors of the development of a comprehensive full coverage without a specific network within the country. Today, science, engineering, technology, agriculture and other sectors achievements, not only in this or that, but all the great changes have taken place in the country.

Third, the recent introduction of civilization for a long time, even if they are not aware of the time period of prosperity ahead of it, especially since the capacity to use them in real life is not enough. They only realized with the passage of time and the great successes began to be implemented. Modern science, engineering, technology and communication in the fields of theoretical achievements have been made based on the real life will be fully implemented in a short time, the production of material and spiritual force.

Fourth, all the civilizations of the past positive impact on the development of humanity. In particular,

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

the early medieval civilization in the East to the west, and later formed the west and therefore a positive impact on the development of civilization East civilizations, nations, peoples and nations closer together played an important role in development. Today, along with its positive aspects, there are also negative aspects, the people, the occurrence of conflicts between countries and regions of the country as well as the basis of their material, moral, technical and technological achievements, serve to ensure the sovereignty of a group of countries want to "mass culture".

**Look at some information " the period of Amir Temur the beginning conflict of civilizations, and to integrate the concept of a single space to lead to the early roots.** Various nations, and kindreds of religion, race, social justice, regardless of their origin, can live up to the agreement to prove with their actions. His kingdom includes a variety of nations and peoples of the globe was truly the biggest multicultural structure. President rightly noted, thanks to the efforts of its Asian and European countries for the first time in history that they were only a geographical and political space. It is not only the great advantages of the merchants, the people and any obstacles to the opening of new roads has appeared"[1]. Thus, the "Amir Temur period for the first time in history, the East and the West acquainted with one of the purposes of cooperation and friendship, and also the beginning of a rapprochement". In general, the period of Amir Temur and analysis of national and spiritual development to the present day issues to be addressed. The solution to the problems of today's national and spiritual development for the correct answers. He experiences a period of history tests and ageless valuable spiritual lessons.

The future of humanity, the image of the new millennium is determined from the current level of development. In this context, the development of the national idea today about the peculiarities of the case, the original cultural elements coming from a wide spread of negative events, new forms of cultural aggression should be noted that on the display.

In particular, the enormous pressure of the organizational, material and financial resources and ideological grounds for centuries in traditional societies based on the events that lead to the depletion of the sample and the reference values were formed under the banner of globalization, universalism and try to instill. At the same time, continuing violence in different parts of the world to maintain the effect of national and cultural identity of national revival, restoration of national values should be the highlight of our growth, soaring feeling. Intellectual and ideological process of globalization, which is a fundamental difference between two reflected in the trend line:

1) occurs in certain universal values and spiritual wealth he created an association;

2) social, economic, political, spiritual and cultural development of the unusual level of diversity, ethnic, cultural, religious, class, racial, regional, local or other forms of coordination skills, with no serious adverse events and ideologies that threaten the future of humanity globalization.

According to the civilizations created by the people, the idea of fostering layer. During the nineteenth and twentieth centuries, in terms of the development of science and culture in Europe a head of the others in the final, and as a result of "science" and "universal values" means first and foremost the European Union began to imagine the elements of culture. Most of the new achievements in this area during the period related to the process of cultural integration. During this period, the peoples of Europe (British, Germans, French, etc.) out of the scope of cross cultural exchange of ideas and information across the region, other regions have started to adapt to the values created. Studies developed. Use creative achievements in various fields of science Orientalists. The study of the lives of the peoples of Europe and the countries of Asia and Africa, on the one hand, to expand their vision of the world, to understand each other in the various peoples of the region, opportunities for dialogue between the state, on the other hand, certain forces According to their economic and military conquest of the weaker dependence complications embodiment, the aspirations of the peoples. In particular the main achievements of the current stage of globalization, a group of highly developed countries, some groups' interests, including ownership of the world to gain more wealth, to establish their domination over others, such as the use of the way of the realization of the goals of the people. That is also the case as an achievement of modern civilization in human nature, status, role and situation. But I can say with confidence that the parties at the present time such a negative, but the positive aspects, the creative process priority. Adverse events, such as the above analysis of the history of the world, the period of rapid social changes and earthquake integrated satellite and is indicative of a transitory nature.

Including the current conflict of civilizations as follows:

- international trade expansion and liberalization (through of water, air and trans ways.....);
- international capital turn over and dangers elimination of way;
- electronic communication Revolution As a result of financial relations happened you want to deep changes;
- transnational corporations activity expansion;

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India)	= 3.117	SIS (USA)	= 0.912	ICV (Poland)	= 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE)	= 0.829	PIHHI (Russia)	= 0.156	PIF (India)	= 1.940
GIF (Australia)	= 0.564	ESJI (KZ)	= 8.716	IBI (India)	= 4.260
JIF	= 1.500	SJIF (Morocco)	= 5.667	OAJI (USA)	= 0.350

• the establishment of the international financial and economic institutions, and so on.

The collision of the most advanced civilizations in the process of globalization, new technologies and technical re-equipment of production, the rapid development of modern communication systems and scientific and technical information necessary for the life of the people and the accumulation and distribution, unprecedented labor creating favorable conditions for the provision of fertility, and this opens up unlimited opportunities. Relations between the countries, which in turn, serve to intensify the process of integration into the global system of social life. Global Development:

First of all, people have to change, the rise of communications, international relations and strengthened its impact on the lives of men;

Secondly, the increased convergence between the countries and peoples desire, at the same time, national characteristics, traditions and through the preservation of cultural heritage but also the need for the development of an independent political trends.

Today, mankind's civilization and the impact of globalization is not only popular, but still with a certain sense of crisis. This is the struggle between the various interests and the influence of the emerging evil, violence, immorality, and a number of other negative actions to use the achievements of civilization strengthening its influence in the city. Its potential to serve humanity and exposed to the pressure of the negative aspects of globalization.

As is well known, with the help of various ideological trying to expand its sphere of influence of certain political forces in the country, the society, against peace and stability in the country, weaken the political and constitutional system and pose a threat to the security of civil society and aimed at undermining the ideological exercising violence. They are to achieve their goals and, above all, wants to conquer the minds of people who want to influence the country tend to be addictive. In general, the process of globalization, ideological, ideological propaganda and agitation is carried out using a variety of methods to combat the main, to win the hearts and minds of people.

Because each human life after it has been approved by the practical ideas about how the program will have the status of a person acting for a specific purpose. Thus, the main objective of the current ideological struggle - the human mind, which is the heart. Currently, to win the hearts and minds of the people most at risk of continuing the ongoing ideological struggle. Such attacks are unworthy of any

evil forces to achieve their heinous ways, their religious and national feelings, the current socio-economic problems in life, as well as modern equipment, trying to master the use of means of communication.

Currently, the process of globalization and changes in the national mentality of the people who formed the "mass culture", because they mentioned the impact of the positive aspects, not individualism, ambition, wealth, even if it is in any case together, ignoring the others, greed, injustice, alienation of advanced features such as negative. To prevent the negative characteristics of the globalization process towards the formation of a universal spirituality, which today has become the most important task of civilization.

A democratic state based on market economy, civil society, depends on the contribution of the current period with the current global processes in the world. Accordingly, the ideological essence of the processes of globalization in the world, they affect the life and development of our people is extremely important to analyze.

Among the most important indicators of civilization and achievements of its people prosperity consciousness and knowledge, and the formation of positive changes in the relationship. Unfortunately, this point of view, the above-mentioned negative actions caused people to be deprived of the pulp and prevails as the crisis of civilization. This is aimed at people of their potential and opportunities of the internal commitment levels remain far behind the level of the speed of the process of globalization, as well as the material needs of the mind, the outlook changes in the requirements and spirit of civilization, but "outside" the process of globalization, negative changes o ' model the impact of the country.

Affecting the process of globalization Speaking about the peculiarities of our civilization, people are not passive, but active participants, becoming the creator of the need to keep it of its positive effects. People are actively involved in the process of globalization, its positive and negative aspects of participating in the manifestation. They are involved in this process and its use of the positive and negative aspects of the need to protect challenge [2].

### Conclusion

In conclusion we can say that globalization and interdependence of civilization based on universal values of human society and combining is implemented, the more negative aspects of the positive aspects of achieving more, and others.

The research was conducted under the guidance of scientific adviser: Tursunova Feruza Tursunovna, teacher of Tashkent Institute of Finance.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

## References:

1. Karimov, I. (2008). *Yuksak manaviyat-yengilmas kuch*. Tashkent: Manaviyat.
2. Karimov, I. A. (2000). *Ozod va obod Vatan, erkin va farovon hayot – pirovard maqsadimiz*. 8-jild. (p.528). Tashkent: O'zbekiston.
3. Karimov, I. A. (1996). *O'zbekiston: milliy istiqlol, iqtisod, siyosat, mafkura*. 1- jild. Tashkent: O'zbekiston.
4. Karimov, I. A. (1996). *Bizdan ozod va obod Vatan qolsin*. 2-jild. (p.380). Tashkent: O'zbekiston.
5. Abilov, O'. (1999). *Milliy g'oya: ma'naviy omillar*. Tashkent: Ma'naviyat.
6. (n.d.). Retrieved 2019, from <http://fikir.uz/blog/TKTI/>
7. Otamuratov, S. (2013). *Globallashuv va milliy ma'naviy xavfsizlik*. (p.63). Tashkent: O'zbekiston.
8. Farhodjonovna, F. N. (2017). Spiritual education of young in the context of globalization. *Mir nauki i obrazovaniya, № 1 (9)*.
9. Kapitsa, S. P., Kurdyumov, S. P., & Malinetskiy, G. G. (2001). *Sinergetika i prognozy budushchego*. (pp.3-5). Moscow: Editorial URSS.
10. Farkhodzhonova, N. F. (2016). Vliyanie ideologicheskikh protsessov na natsional'nuyu ideyu v usloviyakh globalizatsii. *Mir nauki i obrazovaniya, № 2 (6)*.



## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

SOI: [1.1/TAS](#) DOI: [10.15863/TAS](#)  
**International Scientific Journal**  
**Theoretical & Applied Science**

p-ISSN: 2308-4944 (print) e-ISSN: 2409-0085 (online)

Year: 2019 Issue: 04 Volume: 72

Published: 30.04.2019 <http://T-Science.org>

QR – Issue



QR – Article



**Bobur Miltiqboyev**  
master student  
National University of Uzbekistan

**SECTION 21. Pedagogy. Psychology.**  
**Innovations in the field of education.**  
**UDC 37.02**

## THE ROLE OF “CLUSTER” METHOD IN TEACHING SUBJECT “NATIONAL IDEA”

**Abstract:** In this article highlights of importance of interactive methods in education system and the role of “cluster” method in teaching subject “National idea” in the school.

**Key words:** interactive methods, pedagogy, national idea, effectiveness, “cluster” method.

**Language:** English

**Citation:** Miltiqboyev, B. (2019). The role of “cluster” method in teaching subject “National idea”. *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 04 (72), 536-540.

**Soi:** <http://s-o-i.org/1.1/TAS-04-72-71> **Doi:**  <https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2019.04.72.71>

### Introduction

It is known that the absence of teaching in pedagogy into one mold is always justified. Because it negatively affects the development of consciousness and thinking. Whereas, the achievement of diversity of views and opinions in young people is one of the main goals pursued by teaching. The First President of the Republic of Uzbekistan I.A.Karimov noted, in the formation of free and independent thinking in young people, it is necessary to rely on spiritual principles, which are watered with the spirit of humanism, justice. It is necessary to achieve the integration into the minds of young people that these ideas are the main factor of the development of society. When embarking on the study of the meaning, concepts and tamolyils of the idea of national independence, one should always keep in mind that if any idea is strained, it can lead to negative results. It is therefore important to explain to the students in a normative way the vital aspects of the National idea, the fruit of the historical development that unites the people.

### Materials and Methods

The accumulated experience of teaching the science of national idea shows that it is necessary to completely abandon the old methods of passing the lesson. Now it is necessary to use advanced pedagogical methods. The scope of new pedagogical knowledge is based on the requirements of the National Program of Personnel Training. The focus of the study is on finding solutions to the problems of

free personality formation. In particular, the position of Social Humanitarian Sciences in the education of a harmonious person has increased even more within the framework of the national ideology and the requirements for its training in higher educational institutions and renewal of content are also increasing. Interactive methods of didactic process project in the teaching of national idea science the organization of student cognition activities with the help of selected instructional methods in accordance with the stated objective on the topic will enhance the effectiveness of the course.

In uniting representatives of various Nations and nationalities living in our native country around great goals, the idea of national independence, which is the support of spiritual and social life of society, is of great importance. Although the scientific literature defines the idea of national independence as "the product of national thought", this concept directly concerns not only one nationality, but also the life of every person living in our sacred country as their Homeland, regardless of their nation, social authority and faith.

In the book of the First President of Uzbekistan Islam Karimov "High spirituality – invincible force" - it is said the following: "When we say the national idea, we can imagine the most cherished dreams and aspirations, faiths and hopes of each nationality, from time immemorial passing from generation to generation, valued for many centuries, turned into life requirements and spiritual needs".

## Impact Factor:

<b>ISRA (India)</b>	<b>= 3.117</b>	<b>SIS (USA)</b>	<b>= 0.912</b>	<b>ICV (Poland)</b>	<b>= 6.630</b>
<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE)</b>	<b>= 0.829</b>	<b>PIHHI (Russia)</b>	<b>= 0.156</b>	<b>PIF (India)</b>	<b>= 1.940</b>
<b>GIF (Australia)</b>	<b>= 0.564</b>	<b>ESJI (KZ)</b>	<b>= 8.716</b>	<b>IBI (India)</b>	<b>= 4.260</b>
<b>JIF</b>	<b>= 1.500</b>	<b>SJIF (Morocco)</b>	<b>= 5.667</b>	<b>OAJI (USA)</b>	<b>= 0.350</b>

In today's days, large intensive to promote the national idea among a wide multi-layered population. In this case, there is a great merit of the intelligentsia and representatives of the industry. Implementation of the national idea of independence is directly related to the development of education at the level of modern requirements. On this basis, in our country are built and put at the disposal of young people new, with all the amenities of schools, academic lyceums, and vocational colleges. In these educational institutions spiritually perfect, devoted to traditions of ancestors, always ready to appeals of the homeland of economy of the future are brought up. The main goal of the idea of national independence is to strengthen independence, build a free and prosperous homeland and a free, comfortable life. In the exercise of such good intentions, it is considered a sacred duty of every citizen. Below is a discussion on the importance of cluster method in teaching National idea science topics.

Let us dwell on the method of "Cluster".

This is a way of graphic organization of the material, allowing you to make visual those thought processes that occur when immersed in a particular topic. A cluster is a reflection of a nonlinear form of thinking. Sometimes this method is called "visual brainstorming".

The cluster method is universal. It can be used at the entry or immersion stage to systematize available information and identify areas of insufficient knowledge. At the stage of working out the content of the topic, the cluster allows you to capture fragments of new information. At the stage of summing up (reflection) concepts are grouped and logical connections are established between them.

The method "cluster" ("cluster" – a bud, a bundle, a tie) is a well-thought-out strategy, which can

be used in the process of training with students individually or on a group basis.

The use of this method requires compliance with the following conditions:

1. What you thought, write it on paper. Do not think about the quality of your thoughts, just write down.

2. Do not pay attention to the spelling or other aspects of your writing.

3. Do not stop writing until the specified time has come to an end. If you cannot think of an idea for a certain period of time, then start drawing a picture of something on paper. Continue this movement until a new idea is born.

4. Promote as many new ideas as possible within the framework of a particular concept, indicate the relationship between them, the linkage.

With the help of the method, students express their thoughts on the task in a cluster (tiny, separate parts) manner as follows:

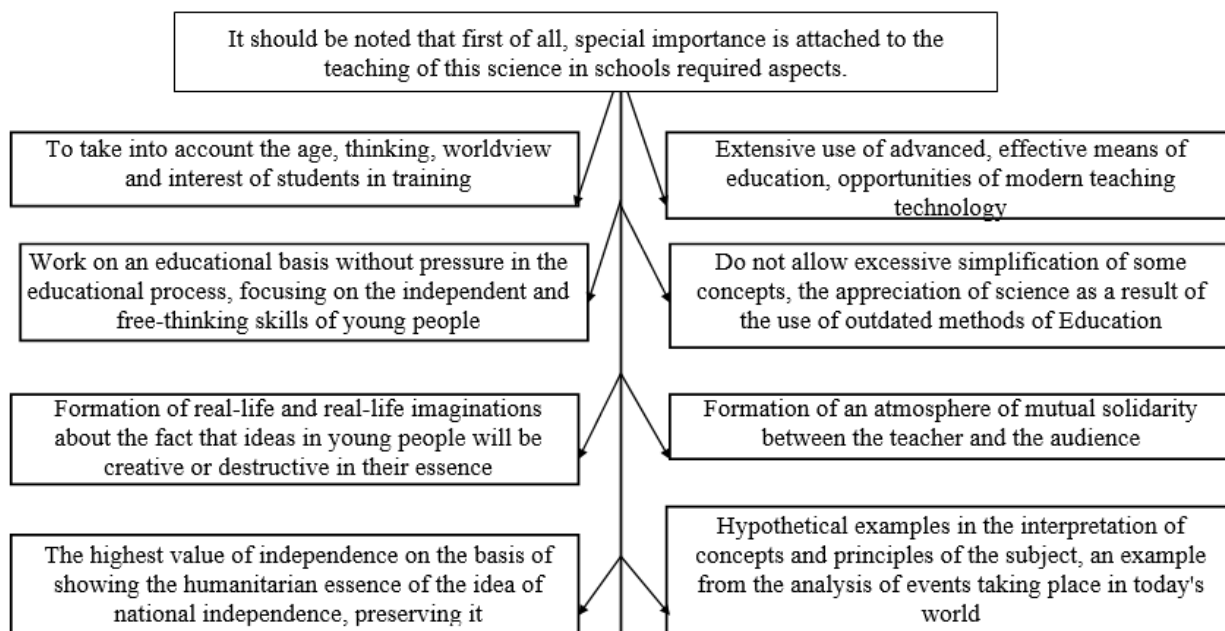
Theme: Interrelation of national idea, social development and ideological processes.

Base concepts. The concept of an idea, its types and social character. The fall of ideology, its forms, goals and objectives. The concept of national ideology, its features, goals and objectives. National ideology common interests, its national characteristics and its universal principles.

Social Development, National idea and, the influence of historical processes on the formation and application of national ideas historical memory is a social moral factor in the development of ideas and ideology. Elements related to the way of thinking and values of the mentalitet. The concept of Idea and ideology, its ontological and gnoseological nature. Features of manifestation of ideas and ideology. The social character of the idea. Types and forms of ideas and ideology.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHII (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350



### Фанни ўқитишда алоҳида аҳамият бериш

Today we need a teacher who is able to master the technologies that provide individualization of education, achieving the planned results, motivated by continuous professional improvement. However, one of the key problems is still the problem of technological readiness of the teacher to work on new educational standards. Under the technological readiness of the teacher is understood to master the teacher of modern technologies for the implementation of system-activity campaign for the design of the educational process.

The rules are very simple. In the center – this is our theme, and around it large semantic units.

The system of clusters covers more information than we get in normal operation.

This technique can be applied at the stage of the call, when we systematize the information received before acquaintance with the main source (text) in the form of questions or titles of semantic blocks.

This technique has great potential at the stage of reflection: correction of incorrect assumptions in the preliminary clusters, filling them on the basis of new information. A very important stage is the presentation of new clusters. The task of this work is not only the systematization of the material, but also the establishment of cause-and-effect relationships between the "bunches".

The sequence of actions in the cluster

The sequence of actions is simple and logical:

1. At the beginning, in the middle of a blank sheet (chalkboard), a Word document, a power Point slide to write a keyword or sentence that is the "heart" of an idea, theme.

2. Around the "throw" words or sentences expressing ideas, facts, images suitable for the topic. (The model "of the planet and its satellites")

3. As you write, the words that appear are connected by straight lines to the key concept. Each of the "satellites" in turn also appear "satellites", new logical connections are established.

The result is a structure that graphically displays our thoughts, determines the information field of the topic. The following rules must be followed when working on clusters:

Don't be afraid to write down everything that comes to mind. Give vent to imagination and intuition.

Keep working until time runs out or ideas run out.

Try to build as many connections as possible. Do not follow a predetermined plan. The system of clusters allows you to cover the excess amount of information. In further work, analyzing the resulting cluster as a "field of ideas", it is necessary to specify the directions of development of the topic.

The following options are available:

Consolidation or detailing of semantic blocks (if necessary)

Identification of several key aspects on which attention will be focused.

Clustering is used both at the stage of challenge and at the stage of reflection, it can be a way of motivating mental activity before the study of the topic or a form of systematization of information on the results of the passage of material.

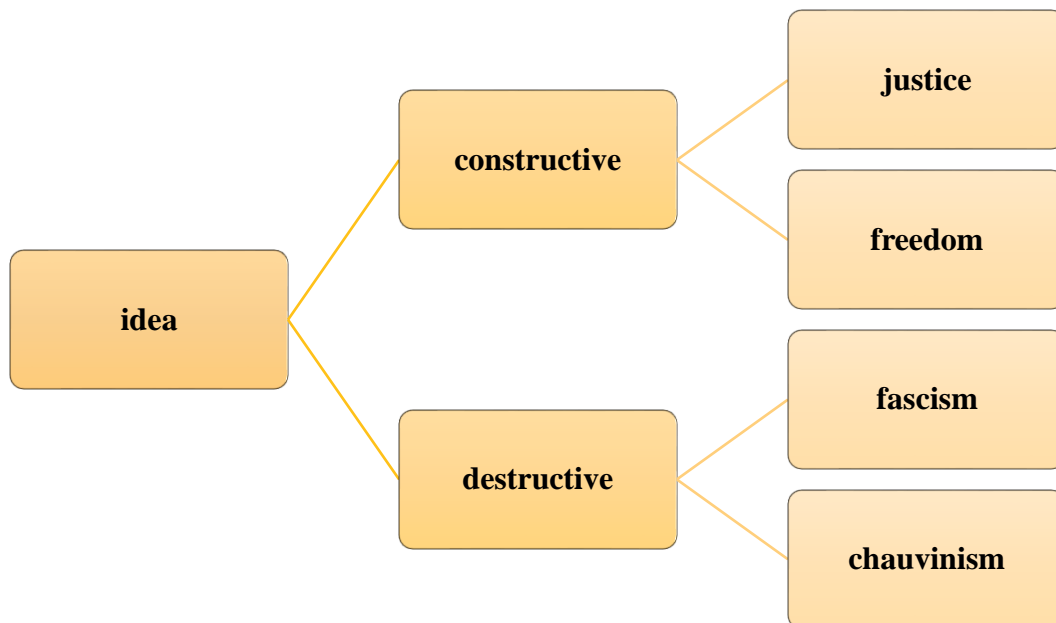
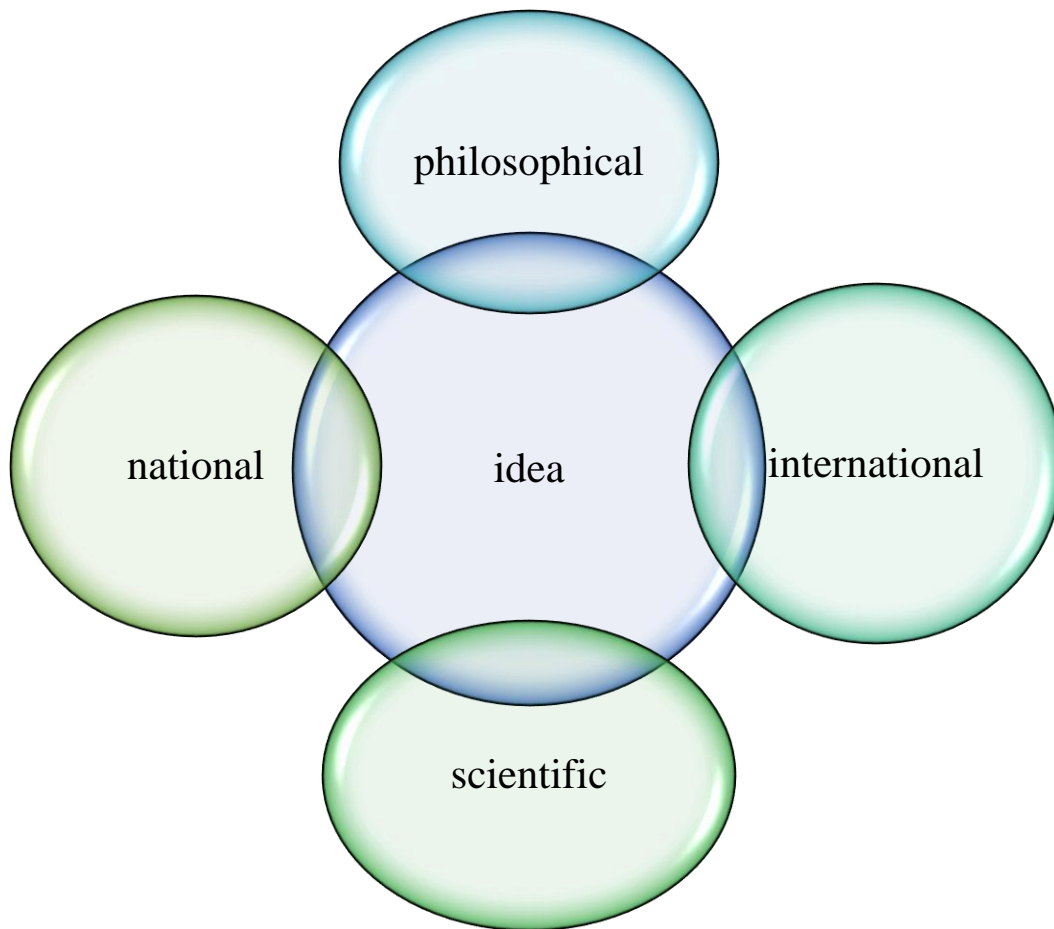
Depending on the purpose, the teacher organizes individual independent work of students or collective activities in the form of a common joint discussion.

The subject area is not limited, the use of clusters is possible in the study of a wide variety of topics.

**Impact Factor:**

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

For example:



**Conclusion.**

A variety of techniques, methods, technologies – this is not an end in itself.

The result is important.

A teacher should evaluate his success with the success of his students.

Non-traditional pedagogical technologies increase children's motivation and interest in school,

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

create an environment of creative cooperation and competition, educate children in self-esteem and respect for differences, give them a sense of creative freedom and, most importantly, bring.

The science of "national idea" has a special theory related to the technological development of teaching processes, pedagogy and achievements of science, it is aimed at the construction of the educational process on a scientific basis, in the first

instance, it provides the basis for the joint activities of teachers and students based on the extensive use of information tools, didactic materials and At the same time, national pride in education recipients, formation of national pride, educates them as Patriots, serves to find a composition of professional personality qualities in future specialists, to arm the activities of teachers with new pedagogical technologies, in a word, to improve the educational process.

## References:

1. Farkhodzhonova, N. F. (2016). *Problemy primeneniya innovatsionnykh tekhnologiy v obrazovatel'nom protsesse na mezhdunarodnom urovne*. Innovatsionnye tendentsii, sotsial'no-ekonomicheskie i pravovye problemy vzaimodeystviya v mezhdunarodnom prostranstve. pp.58-61.
2. Karimov, I. A. (2000). *Ozod va obod Vatan, erkin va farovon hayot – pirovard maqsadimiz*. 8-jild. (p.528). Tashkent: O'zbekiston.
3. Karimov, I. A. (1996). *O'zbekiston: milliy istiqlol, iqtisod, siyosat, mafkura*. 1- jild. (p.364). Tashkent: O'zbekiston.
4. Karimov, I. A. (1996). *Bizdan ozod va obod Vatan qolsin*. 2-jild. (p.380). Tashkent: O'zbekiston.
5. Abilov, O'. (1999). *Milliy g'oya: ma'naviy omillar*. Tashkent: Ma'naviyat.
6. (2000). *Milliy istiqlol g'oyasi: asosiy tushuncha va tamoyillar*. Tashkent: O'zbekiston.
7. (2007). *Milliy g'oya: targ'ibot texnologiyalari va atamalar lug'ati*. Tashkent: Akademiya nashriyoti.
8. (2001). *«Milliy istiqlol g'oyasi: asosiy tushuncha va tamoyillar» fanini ta'lim muassasalarida o'qitish bo'yicha uslubiy tavsiyalar: o'zbek va rus tillarida*. O'zbekiston Respublikasi Oliy va o'rta maxsus ta'lim vazirligi. Tashkent.
9. (2002). *Milliy istiqlol g'oyasi targ'ibotining ilmiy asoslari*. Tashkent.
10. Farkhodzhonova, N. F. (2016). Vliyaniye ideologicheskikh protsessov na natsional'nuyu ideyu v usloviyakh globalizatsii. *Mir nauki i obrazovaniya*, № 2 (6).

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

SOI: [1.1/TAS](#) DOI: [10.15863/TAS](#)  
**International Scientific Journal**  
**Theoretical & Applied Science**

p-ISSN: 2308-4944 (print) e-ISSN: 2409-0085 (online)

Year: 2019 Issue: 04 Volume: 72

Published: 30.04.2019 <http://T-Science.org>

QR – Issue

QR – Article



**Feruza Melsovna Khajieva**

PhD, Senior teacher of the English literature department  
Bukhara State University, Uzbekistan

**SECTION 29. Literature. Folklore. Translation Studies.**  
**UDC 82-2**

## DECODING OF STYLISTIC DEVICES IN RUSSIAN AND ENGLISH TRANSLATIONS OF THE UZBEK NOVEL “DAYS GONE BY” BY ABDULLA QADIRI (STYLISTIC CORRESPONDENCES AND TRANSFORMATIONS)

**Abstract:** *The earliest Uzbek novel “Days gone by” written by the founder of Uzbek school of novels Abdulla Qadiri was recently translated into English by Carol Ermakova M.A., a British graduate in Russian Literature and qualified translator with over 30 published literary translations. The English version of the novel was published by Nouveau Monde Editions in 2018 with the support of the Karimov Foundation. The translation of the novel was done from Russian (translated by Muhammad Nodir Safarov). Russian served as a mediator language and the English version deserves the attention of the specialists in the sphere of theory of translation due to its acknowledged quality. In the article we tried to investigate stylistic peculiarities of the original and translated versions of the novel and discuss about correspondence and transformation of stylistic devices which carry a great significance in deep understanding of the innate nature of the original and target language; historical, national, social and cultural issues of the novel.*

**Key words:** *stylistic correspondence and transformation, metaphor, simile, epithet, parallel construction, aposiopesis, image.*

**Language:** English

**Citation:** Khajieva, F. M. (2019). Decoding of stylistic devices in Russian and English translations of the Uzbek novel “days gone by” by Abdulla Qadiri (stylistic correspondences and transformations). *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 04 (72), 541-545.

**Soi:** <http://s-o-i.org/1.1/TAS-04-72-72> **Doi:**  <https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2019.04.72.72>

### Main part:

In the theory of translation the problem of stylistic correspondence (equivalence) is considered to be the translation of phonetic, syntactical, semantic expressiveness of the language and its stylistic properties from the point of view of their adequacy in the target language. In many theoretical views this problem is opposed to the problem of stylistic transformation where the stylistic changes are observed. These changes can occur in the ways of: 1) the change of form of the device but the image stays unchanged, 2) change of the image but stylistic device remains unchanged, 3) change of both device and image due to reader's pragmatic and cultural understanding, 4) compensation (Бакаева М.К. 2004). Stylistic correspondence embraces such issues as choosing appropriate language units in the process of translation and delivering them without distorting

the meaning or national colour. This sphere of investigation finds itself in the juncture of two interdependent subjects as stylistics and theory of translation.

The author's ability to convey the beauty, mentality, character, historical and national properties of Uzbek nation made the novel a national heritage. The whole nation alludes the personages or events from the novel, uses the phrases from the work in a similar-with-episodes-from-book situations. Abdulla Qadiri's poetic language became the object of investigation for many researches in national literature criticism due to its expressive and striking features. So, stylistic properties of the translation of novel deserve scrupulous investigation.

Stylistic analysis of the original version and translation of the novel “Days gone by” by Abdulla Qadiri demonstrates that translation of stylistic

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIIHU (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

devices from one language to another requires subtle understanding of tropes, their vivid imagery functions. Metaphors, similes, epithets and other tropes serve to convey deep cultural meaning in a compressed way using less words or description. They deliver core information through igniting reader's sense perception and thinking ability. In their turn, figures of speech, due to their special structures, have great influence on intensifying the images in the literary piece and both type of devices play crucial role in the belles-lettres text. It is of great importance to deliver them in the translation of the work of art.

From the plot of the novel "Days gone by", the reader witnesses the sacred love of two main personages – Atabek and Kumush. Their love is ideal but tragic. Equally to their love, inner and outer beauty of them is eulogized by the author in the highly poetic form. The main heroine is the symbol of ideal beauty, purity and tenderness. Her transcendent beauty and feelings are demonstrated by the author in each of her gesture, speech and actions. Epithets, adjectives, metaphors, syntactical structures serve to convey unrepeatable sense and sensibility. The following extract displays the initial presenting of Kumush as well as her appearance and subtle imprint of first love.

Uzbek Original Language	"Uning qora zulfi par yostiqling turli tomoniga tartibsiz suratda t'oz'gib, quyuq jingila kiprikostidagi tim qora k'ozlari bir nuqtaga tikilgan-da, nimadir bir narsanik'organ <i>kabi</i> ... qor-qora kamon (epithet), o'tib ketkan nafis, qiyiq qoshlari chimirilganda, nimadir binnarsadan cho'chigan <i>kabi</i> ... to'lgan oydek (simile) g'uborsiz oq yuzi biroz qizillikka aylangan-da, kimdandir uyalgan <i>kabi</i> ... [...] Bu qiz suratida ko'ringan malak (metaphor) qutidorning qizi — Kumushbibi edi. [...] Kumushbibining sezilar-sezilmas kulimsirashidan yoqutdek (simile) irinlari ostidagi sadafdek (simile) oq tishlari ko'rinib ketdi ersa-da, biroq uning bu holi tezlik bilan tundliqqa alishindi" ( <i>Qodiriy A. 2007</i> ).
Russian Mediator Language	"На подушках в беспорядке разместились её черные косы, угольно-черные глаза из-под длинных пушистых ресниц, <i>словно</i> заметив что-то, смотрят в одну точку... Иссинья-черные, чрезвычайно тонкие изогнутые брови сдвинуты, <i>будто</i> она встревожена чем-то... Луноликое(epithet), беззаботно ясное (epithet) лицо слегка тронуту стыдливым (epithet) румянцем... [...] Ангел (metaphor), воплощенный в образе девушки, был дочерью кутидора – Кумушбиби. [...] На рубиновые (epithet) губы Кумуш-биби незаметно набежала улыбка, обнажая жемчужные (epithet) зубы, однако тут же её лицо приняло холодное выражение" ( <i>Кадыри А., 2009</i> ).
English Target Language	"Her black braids lie tangled among the pillows, her jet-black eyes gaze out from under her long thick eyelashes, staring into space <i>as though</i> she had glimpsed something... Her fine blue-black arched (epithet) brows are knitted into a frown <i>as though</i> something troubles her... A bashful (epithet) blush lightly flushes her clear, carefree face, round and luminescent as the full moon. (simile) [...] This angel (metaphor) in the form of a girl is Kutidor's daughter, Kumush-bibi.[...] A smile run imperceptibly over Kumush-bibi's ruby (epithet) lips, her pearly (epithet) teeth flashed fleetingly, but her face froze into a cold expression" ( <i>Qadiri A., 2018</i> ).

From the **semantic** point of view, Abdulla Qadiri uses descriptive imagery to create the the main heroine of the work – Kumushbibi. While sketching each facial expression the author uses the Eastern symbolic associations. The author uses metaphor "malak" – "ангел" – "angel" to show her divine beauty. While describing Kumush's eyebrows Qadiri uses the word "kamon"(literally: bow) – "изогнутый (literally: curved)" – "arched", while describing whiteness of her complexion the author uses the word "oydek" – "лунолика" – "as the full moon", while describing red lips the author uses the word "yoqutdek" – "рубиновые" – "rubi", describing her teeth the narrator uses the word "sadafdek" – "жемчужные" – "pearl. Each word used for creating imagery plays an important role in describing the youthful beauty of Kumush.

From the **syntactic** point of view the lines of the origin are built on three parallel construction cored on the cyclic reiteration of the word "*kabi*" giving it

rhythmical effect. The aim of the author in this structure is of dual character. Firstly, his aim is to give primary sketch of the main female character highlighting her unearthly beauty and secondly, it is to show her psychological state, the state of the girl who deeply felt in pure love for the first time. The verbs in Uzbek "k'organ"(had glimpsed), "cho'chigan"(troubles), "uyalgan"(feels shy) are showing Kumush's subtle feelings which is obscure to the young girl and which causes her vague sickness. The author deliberately keeps the reader in suspense with the help of aposiopesis and further in retrospective episode describes the first encounter of two young people whose hearts were strongly tied. In that manner the author reasons the deep psychological state and with parallel structure gradually intensifies the situation.

How is the described psychological condition rendered in the translated lines? In the translations (both Russian and English) parallel construction is

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	ПИИИ (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

conveyed partially. Only in the initial two sentences the parallelism is rendered but in the third it is distorted or it is given with the help of another device. Further we attempt to justify. In the Russian translation the parallelism is kept with the help of the comparative conjunctions “словно”, “будто” both having the meaning of “as if” or “as though” in initial two sentences. The verbs “заметив” (had glimpsed) and “встревожена” (troubles) are also translated to demonstrate psychological state of the heroine. But the third verb of parallel structure “feels shy” is given with the help of the epithet “стыдливый румянец” (bashful blush). The figure of speech - parallel construction is lost and changed into trope – epithet, but the image is kept. That is why the meaning is not lost. Aposiopesis is also kept in all three sentences.

In the original the colour of eyes and brows of Kumush are described with words “qor-qora” and “tim-qora” the word “qora” gets intensifiers and the meaning of the word becomes more expressive – “very or extremely black” which highlights natural beauty of the girl. But in the translations she has slightly different – “иссиня-черные” (blue-black) brows. In Uzbek culture extremely black eyes and brows symbolize innate beautiful face. If the woman uses national make up “usma” (a plant the juice of which is painted on the brows which saturates them and gives blue-black colour) the colour of brows change into blue-black. The translator used different shades of black to avoid the reiteration of the word “black” but, as a result, in the Russian version of the novel Kumush uses make up.

Due to the mentioned structural and semantic changes in the Russian the English translation also has some transformations.

Language	Uzbek	Russian	English
Word and its translation	to'lganoydek	лунолика	as the full moon
Form of Trope	simile	epithet	simile
Image	moon	moon	moon

The change of imagery and but the correspondence of trope can be observed in the description of the brows of the heroine. “Камон” – “изогнутый” – “arched”. These three words have the same contextual meaning – the meaning of curve or arc. In Uzbek “камон” (literally – bow) is a trope. It is epithet. In Russian “изогнутый” (curved) is an attribute. In English “arched” is epithet. The epithets in Uzbek and English are trite, but still they carry

Language	Uzbek	Russian	English
Word and its translation	kamon	изогнутый	arched
Form of Trope	epithet	attribute (not trope)	epithet
Image	bow		a curved structure

In this case, the notion of “камон” could be given in Russian like “бровикакполумесяц” (literally: crescent like brows) – simile. As, to say

In English the translator uses the comparative conjunction *as though* to keep parallelism in the first and the second sentences and describes both appearance and psychological state. The girl with Oriental beauty: black hair, eyes, eyelashes and blue-black brows contrasting her white complexion is in the room alone with her own sweet recollections. Each time she remembers something her facial expression changes as though she had witnessed something, something troubles her and that is why she feels shy. The aposiopesis in the lines creates the suspense. The third sentence ends with aposiopesis as in the previous ones, but parallelism of them is lost. Here the translator uses the comparative conjunction “as”, but this is the structural indicator of the simile to compare heroines face to moon. How did the translator kept the meaning of shyness then? Distorting of the parallelism did not influence on the meaning. Why? The beginning of the syntactic unit “*A bashful (epithet) blush lightly flushes her clear, carefree face...*” conveys the meaning of the girl’s shyness like in the Russian version. With epithet *bashful* translator shows the third element of parallel structure in Uzbek “kimdandiruyalgankabi...”.

A very interesting change happened in the translation of the simile “to'lganoydek”. In the Russian this trope is given with the epithet “лунолика”. The form of the trope is changed but the image of moon is kept. In English though it was translated from Russian the trope and the image are rendered as in the original. “To'lganoydek” – “лунолика” – “as full moon”. Both in Uzbek and English the trope is simile and the image is “moon”. The following table shows the changes of tropes and imagery in tree languages.

transference of word meaning. In Russian the translator does not use a stylistic device. It is rendered with the help of logical attribute. The transformation of the trope can be observed between the Uzbek and Russian versions of the notion of “камон”. But in the English version the Uzbek trope “камон” – has taken the form of epithet “arched”(the image of the arch is conveying the form of the curve). Here the form of the trope is kept, but the image has changed.

“арочныеброви” (literally: arched brows) could be inappropriate. The Russians do not implement this notion while describing the form of the brows. They



## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	ПИИЦ (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

usually transfer the image of crescent to show the beauty and form of the eyebrows. Thus, the translation of this notion is closely connected with cultural, pragmatic issues of the language and choosing the correct register. Here the translator uses the comparison which is accepted by the culture. Otherwise the reader will not understand the words due to the subtle nuances of the language.

The similes in the original version of the novel “yoqutdek” and “sadafdek” in the Russian and English translations transformed into epithets “рубиновые” – “ruby” and “жемчужные” – “pearl”. Here the form of the trope changes, but the image does not, it stays unchanged. Here we can observe the case of the change of form of the stylistic device but the image is rendered as in the original.

Language	Uzbek	Russian	English
Word and its translation	Yoqutdek	рубиновые	ruby
Form of Trope	simile	epithet	epithet
Image	ruby	ruby	ruby
Word and its translation	sadafdek	жемчужные	pearl
Form of Trope	simile	epithet	epithet
Image	pearl	pearl	pearl

The metaphor “malak” – “ангел” – “angel” shows both the description of Kumush and her tender character. The main heroine is the symbol of ideal beauty, purity and kindness. In the Russian and English translations this metaphor is rendered in corresponding way. That is to say, metaphor is translated as a metaphor as in all three languages this notion gives the image of divinity. The word “angel” arises in the reader’s perception the positive notion connected with religious beliefs, i.e. “angel” in all three cultures is one of a class of spiritual beings attendant upon God. The concept of their deity is accepted in Uzbek, Russia and English cultures.

In the process of analysis of the novel and its translation another distinctive phenomena could be observed. There are some cases when the interpreter created the stylistic device in the translation of the original text. For instance, in the course of events described in the book the reader witnesses an intriguing episode when Kumush saves her husband and father from unjust Khudayarkhan’s verdict. She brings a letter to prove her words and when the tension of the situation was over Atabek hears the voice of his Kumush. In the lines of origin the heroine’s voice was described in the following way:

Uzbek Original Language	Otabekning qulog‘iga eshitilgan bu tovush uning <i>yuragini ingichka yeriga borib tekkan edi</i> (Qodiriy A., 2007) (idiomatic expression).
Russian Mediator Language	Эти слова, достигшие слуха Атабека, затронул и самые нежные струны его сердца (Кадыри А., 2009) (idiomatic expression).
English Target Language	When the sweet melody (metaphor) of these words reached Atabek’s ears, <i>they tugged at his very heartstrings</i> (Kadiri A., 2018) (idiomatic expression).

In the Uzbek lines with the help of idiomatic expression “*yuragini ingichka yeriga borib tekkan edi*” – “*затронули самые нежные струны его сердца*” – “*they tugged at his very heartstrings*” the author uses metaphor to create tender voice of the heroine. Abdulla Qadiri implies subtle feelings of Kumush’s beloved Atabek. When he heard the voice of Kumush, who saved their life due to her analytical mind, moreover such tense, perturbing confusion was solved, he was extremely happy and the voice seemed like music tugging his heart. The idiomatic expression was translated correspondingly both in Russian and English. But the interesting moment here is that English translator created the metaphor “sweet melody of these words” instead of simple word “voice” which is given in the original and Russian versions. The translator originates the stylistic device depending on the contextual and emotive state of the heroes and makes the situation more intensifying. This

phenomenon in the translation theory indicates to the skillful understanding of the language and its impressive qualities by the translator.

### Conclusion:

The translation of stylistic devices requires maximum attention and understanding of the inner semantic and structural features of the tropes and figures of speech as well as its cultural peculiarities of language units from the translator. Additionally to the existing theories of ways of rendering stylistic devices such as: a). stylistic correspondence of both form and image of the device, b). correspondence of image but change of the form of device, c). correspondence of form but the change of the image of the device it is possible to say that d). syntactic stylistic device can be rendered in the form of semantic stylistic device and e). creating the new

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

stylistic device in the process of translation is also possible which was proved in the article.

## References:

1. Galperin, I. (1977). *Stylistics*. (p.335). Moscow: Higher school.
2. Qadiri, A. (2018). *Days gone by*. (p.349). Paris: Nouveau Monde editions.
3. Qodiriy, A. (2007). *O'tkan kunlar (roman)*. [www.ziyouz.com](http://www.ziyouz.com) kutubxonasi, p. 220.
4. Bakaeva, M. K. (2004). *Angliya-AQSh adabietidan yzbek tiliga she"riy tarzima va qiesiy she"rshunoslik muammolari*. Fil. fanl. dokt. ... diss. avtoreferati. (p.50). Toshkent.
5. Vinogradov, V. S. (2001). *Vvedenie v perevodovedenie (obshchie i leksicheskie voprosy)*. (p.224). Moscow: Izdatel'stvo instituta obshchego srednego obrazovaniya RAO.
6. Vinogradov, V. S. (1978). *Leksicheskie voprosyperevoda khudozhestvennoy prozy*. (p.172). Moscow: Izdatel'stvo Moskovskogo universiteta.
7. Fedorov, A. V. (1983). *Osnovy obshchey teorii perevoda (lingvisticheskie problemy)*. (p.205). Moscow: Vysshaya shkola.
8. Kadyri, A. (2009). *Minuvshie dni*. (p.425). Tashkent: Shark.
9. Musaev, K. (2003). *Tarzhimanazariyasi*. (p.352). Toshkent.
10. Salomov, G. (1990). *Tarzhima nazariyasi asoslari*. Toshkent.
11. Shveytser, A. D. (1988). *Teoriya perevoda status problemy*. (p.214). Moscow: Nauka.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

SOI: [1.1/TAS](#) DOI: [10.15863/TAS](#)

## International Scientific Journal Theoretical & Applied Science

p-ISSN: 2308-4944 (print) e-ISSN: 2409-0085 (online)

Year: 2019 Issue: 04 Volume: 72

Published: 30.04.2019 <http://T-Science.org>

QR – Issue



QR – Article



SECTION 13. Geography. History. Oceanology.  
Meteorology.

A.B. Kholikulov  
PhD., Docent,  
National University of Uzbekistan,  
Tashkent, Republic of Uzbekistan  
[kholikulov@mail.ru](mailto:kholikulov@mail.ru)

## BUKHARA EMIRATE'S FARMING IN THE XIX-XX CENTURIES (IN THE CASE OF KASHKADARYA OASIS STABLES)

**Abstract:** This article discusses the development of land types of the Bukhara emirate in the XIX-XX centuries, as well as the development of the Kashkadarya oasis in four economic regions. It is noted that the first economic region - Shahrisabz, Kitab and Yakkabag, with its fertile lands and sufficient water supply in the emirate, is one of the largest breeding wheat, grain and barley, in the second central Kashkadarya economic region – Chirakchi.

In the Karshi economic region of the Kashkadarya region, along with the cultivation of cereals, vegetables and melons, horticulture was well developed, as well as cotton, tobacco and other crops, in the south-east Kashkadarya or Guzar economic region, the population of irrigated agriculture is due to the fact that more inadequate for its agriculture, which was the source of information of the Russian military, travelers and archival data.

**Key words:** Bukhara Emirate, Shahrisabz, Kitab, Yakkabag, Chirakchi, Karshi, Guzar, treasury, property title, royal lands, wheat, barley, rice, corn, cotton.

**Language:** English

**Citation:** Kholikulov, A. B. (2019). Bukhara emirate's farming in the XIX-XX centuries (in the case of Kashkadarya oasis stables). *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 04 (72), 546-549.

**Soi:** <http://s-o-i.org/1.1/TAS-04-72-73> **Doi:**  <https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2019.04.72.73>

### Introduction

In the 19th and early 20th centuries, as in other khanates, the Emirate of Bukhara was also the main source of wealth, and agriculture was the main source of income. As in other parts of the Emirates, arable land in the Kashkadarya Valley consists of two: irrigated lands and naturally irrigated [1, P. 30]. All irrigated land in the emirate is divided into several types, such as: private property, titles, treasury, royal lands [2, P. 194].

Kashkadarya, which is an important source of water, supplied 600,000 of its colonies with water to Shahrisabz, Yakkabag, Chirakchi, Guzar and Karshi [3, P. 11]. The land was 79.988, Shahrisabz 48.427, Yakkabag 95.864, Chirakchi 602.983, Guzar 31.650, and Karshi - 205.005 units [4].

The rivers of the oasis of Kashkadarya had 224 irrigation canals at the end of the XIX century. The length of these channels is 25 km, the rest - 4-8 km. The Kashkadarya basin can be divided into two parts: water supply (Shahrisabz) and lower water (Karshi), which lacks water. In the upper part of the river, the swamps were caused by an abundance of water, and the lower part often dried out [5, P. 40].

### Materials and methods

At the beginning of the XIX-XX centuries, the oasis agriculture developed in four economic areas:

1. East Kashkadarya - plains and mountainous areas of Shahrisabz, Kitab and Yakkabag regions.
2. Area of middle Kashkadarya or Chirakchi.
3. Lands of the south-east of Kashkadarya or Guzar regions.
4. Karshi land in the lower reaches of Kashkadarya.

In the case of agriculture, we consider the development of agriculture on the example of the four economic regions above.

The first economic region - Shahrisabz, Kitab and Yakkabag differed in the emirate with their fertile land and sufficient water supply. Most of the population was engaged in farming [6, P. 176]. Grain growing is a major place in agriculture. Mahmud Ibn Walid claims that in Shahrisabz a good harvest is obtained from grain [7, P. 76]. On the land of Shahrisabz, wheat, barley, oats and planted with herbs [8, P.85–86]. In the area Yakkabag were large wheat pellets. Lands have a good grain harvest.

The fields of Shahrisabz mainly consist of wheat, barley, four types of rice, corn, cotton, sesame, sage,

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

flax, lentils, beans, tobacco seeds (poppy and safflower), greens, onions, beets, cinnamon, cabbage, cucumber, (long cucumber), turnip, pepper, carrot, melon and watermelon. They are from the beginning of spring, from March 15th to April 15th; winter wheat and barley are planted from the beginning of the criterion. Rice of grain crops is grown in large quantities, according to the emirs of Bobobek and Jurabek, the breeding stations of Kitab and Shahrisabz were sown with wheat and barley for 3/10 of the sown area and rice for 4/10 of the rice and the remaining 3/10 of other crops. Depending on the time of planting, the above-mentioned crops are divided into two types: white (wheat, barley, lentil, linseed, and pea) and blue (those that fall into it). When the crop is harvested twice a year and the white crop is harvested, green crops are planted.

Shahrisabz gardens include orchards, vineyards and grapes of the same species, the second type is mixed fruit trees, and the third type is trees of ornamental trees used for building the jungle.

In the gardens of Shahrisabz, fruit trees are planted, such as apples, apricot, grapes, peach, pomegranate, almond, quince, walnut, plum, cherry. In Russian sources, it is noted that the Kitab district was covered with green gardens [9], and peaches were popular in the Bukhara emirate [10, P. 475]. Tree species used in construction include poplars and ribs [11, P. 19–21]. Most mulberry trees created the basis for silk development. According to data of the 19th century, “Shahrisabz” and adjacent cotton were popular, and “the cotton brought to Bukhara from Russia was mainly obtained from Sarsabz (Shahrisabz)” [12, P. 49].

Tobacco was also grown in Eastern Kashkadarya and contained up to 1,050 cows per year in oak stables, written in archival documents [13]. As a result, high yields and large water resources, most of the agricultural commodities, produced in the economic regions of Shahrisabz, Kitab and Yakkabag, most of the products were exported to other cities.

Wheat and barley are grown in the economic region of middle Kashkadarya, especially in Chirakchi region. The region is one of the largest grain producing regions. Karakalpak farm is famous for its own crops, it could afford to grow 2,000 bats of wheat and 1,000 barley per year [14, P. 325]. In Beshchashma area, from a few wheat flour at a rate of 60 pounds. Mainly, melon seeds, beets, carrots, turnips, cauliflower, onions, cucumbers, peas, lentils, beans, watermelons, melons, zucchini are planted in the district. Grapes, pomegranates, figs, peaches, apricots, apples, pears, quinces, cherries, almonds and oleaster were grown. Among the fruit trees, apricots, pomegranates, are the most productive, their dried fruits were delivered to local needs, as well as were exported to Russia [15, P. 124].

Vegetable growing and horticulture are developed on irrigated fertile soils in the Kashkadarya

River. Sources include livestock vines, onions, carrots and cotton fields [16, P. 104]. The fertile land of the Chirakchi had sufficient amount of water from Kashkadarya. Peasants from Karshi and Samarkand came here and rented land and planted crops.

The village of Nekuz, about 12 km away from Karshi, the land was watered by Chitarik and belongs to Karshi madrasah. The main crops are wheat and barley, and cotton was planted at the beginning of the 20th century.

Horticulture is well developed in the Karshi economic region, located in the foothills of the Kashkadarya, along with the cultivation of cereals, vegetables and melons. Cotton, tobacco and other crops are also grown. According to the historical data, the Karshi region's spring is green, grains and sweet melons are grown, hasn't enough water source [17, P. 47], can harvest adequate yields under favorable weather conditions, hasn't yields in drought period [18, P. 188-191].

Mir Izzatullah, who lived in Kosa and Karshi in 1813, written that wheat and barley were grown, caravans stopped in Karshi for 3-4 days for providing water, barley and nutrients for travel [19, P. 213].

During this period, Karshi had plenty of water merely in spring. In June, July and August, water was delivered to Karshievery 10 days a month from Shahrisabz, Kitab and Guzar in turn. Water couldn't reach to its destination cause of hot air, was dried on the road and watered only the gardens of Karshi. Nevertheless, because of the productive land, the yield of wheat reached 500,000 batman. Half of the land in Beclak belongs to the land, and the rest is injured. White and blue tobacco varieties were planted [10, P. 468], and the best tobacco producers are grown by residents of Karshi [20]. The popularity of tobacco products, like pomegranates and grapes of Shahrisabz, is mentioned in many sources.

Karshi district is also famous for its gardens and vineyards. In Karshi, Chirakchi, Husar there are large vineyards, as well as grapes, a mask, white raisins and nutmeg. The population of the vineyard had of myriad benefit, Karshi grapes and raisins are very popular not only in Central Asia, but also beyond its borders [21, P. 10]. The absence of gardening in the garden of the Zarafshan oasis is reflected in sources and archival documents [22, P. 92]. The surroundings of Karshi are surrounded by melons, gardens and vineyards. Izzatullah declares: “The gardens around Karshi are well-known for their wonderful grapes and vines [23, P. 213]. The beautiful gardens of the city were also mentioned by A. Bornes [24, P. 374].

Silkworm breeding was also common in Karshi district [25]. Varieties of confectionery and jam are made from juice from taranjabin flower in the desert surrounding Karshi [26, P. 168-169].

Koson was also famous for its horticulture and all incomes from the gardens was directly transferred to the treasury of Karshi. [27, P. 55]

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

At the beginning of the 20th century, cotton production in Karshi developed significantly [28, P. 341]. According to the data in 1913, there are 317,600 hectares of land in the oasis, of which 2,000 hectares was used to plant cotton. In 1913, the yield was 5 centners per hectare, and cotton, 7.3 centners per hectare.

The population of the southeastern Kashkadarya or Guzar economic region had more agriculture due to the lack of water resources for irrigated agriculture. Drinking water is mainly extracted from wells.

Dwellers who deal with farming grew wheat and barley on  $\frac{3}{4}$  of their land [29, P. 166]. Rice, as well as cotton, carrots and low-fat corners were sown the rest of the land. These crops are mainly planted in the northwestern part of the Guzar valley. Wheat and barley are harvested from 10 to 20 tonnes, which gives an average annual yield of 165,000 tonnes.

There were few gardens in Guzara and in its northwest, but gardening is limited only witholeaster in the big and small Urariver, fruit trees are not planted in the Kirschakdarya valley.

Apricot, peach, cherry, apple, pear, quince, almond, pomegranates and grapes are grown in beklík land. Grapes, especially the maska varieties and apricot are famous for their unrepeated taste. Dried apricots and raisinsexported to Bukhara and Russian. Fiber, poplar, elm, and mulberry were used for building materials, wood, and other needs.

Wheat grains in this area are divided into three types: white wheat, red wheat and black wheat. Up to 100-150 pounds of barley could be harvested on each10 square meters of irrigated land.

There are two types of millet: white and red varieties, and each tithe is collected from 80 to 100 pounds. Usually, in early June, the sowing of winter wheat or barley was harvested, as well as in September and October. If planted separately, it is planted in April and collected in July or early August. Nearly 150-180 pounds of peanuts and about 80-120 pounds of corn were harvested. [10, P. 442-450].

Lessar, a political agent in Bukhara in the 80's of the 19th century, studied the state of the irrigation system and developed a project to developlarge part of the beklík land and Karshi desert through using Amudarya water. However, 7 millionrubleshad to be allocated for this project from emirates treasure. Bukhara's government couldn't afford such huge cost, afterwards the project was not implemented. However, without the construction of large irrigation systems,it was concluded that with the help of existing canals in the Kashkadarya Valley, more than 2000 square meters area could be used [16, P. 88-89].

### Conclusion

In summary, in the XIX-XX centuries, agriculture and livestock were the basis of economic life in Kashkadarya oasis. Mountainous and foothill areas of the region were specializing in livestock, agriculture and gardening, steppes was specializing in nomadic livestock farming, and riverside areas were specializing in settled agriculture.

In the XIX-XX centuries, traditional forms and types of cultivation of agriculture were preservedin the Kashkadarya region, manufacturing was associated with the requirements of the domestic and foreign markets.

### References:

1. Kun, A. A. (1880). *Ocherki Shagrisebzkogo bekvstva*. ZIRGO po otdeleniyu etnografii. – SPb., T.VI.
2. Geyer, I. I. (1909). *Turkestan*. Tashkent.
3. Logofet, D. I. (1911). *Buxarskoe xanstvo pod russkim protektoratom*. SPb.: B.I., T. II. pp. 78.
4. Remez, I. A. (1922). *Vneshnyaya trgovlya Buxari do mirovoy voyni*. Tashkent: SSU Turkrespubliki.
5. Astanova, G. Y. (1990). *Dokumentalnie istochniki Buxarskogo xanstva XIX nachala XX v. ob administrativnix deleniyax i ix razmerax*. Pozdnefeodalny gorod Sredney Azii. Aktualne problem istoricheskoy nauki. (p.218). Tashkent: Fan. O'zR MDA. 51-jamg'arma, 1-ro'yxat, 102 ish, 1-2 varaq.
6. (1926). *Material po rayonirovaniyu Sredney Azii. Territoriya i naselenie Buxari i Xorezma*. Buxara - Tashkent. Kn. I. Ch.1.
7. Arxipov, K. (1884). *Voennaya rekognosirovka ravninnoy chasti Buxarskogo xanstva, proizvedennaya v 1883 g.* Sbornik geograficheskix, topograficheskix i statisticheskix materialov po Azii. SPb.: Voennaya tipografiya. Vp. XX.
8. Makhmud ibn Vali. (1970). *Bakhr-al asror fi manakib al-khayr (More tayn otositelno doblestey blagorodnix)*. Geografiya / Perevod, vvedenie, primechaniya i ukazateli B.A.Axmedova. Tashkent: Fan.
9. Bekchurin (1873). *Shakhrisabzkoe vladeniya po rasskazam Djurabeka i Bababeka*. Turkestanskiy sbornik. SPb., T. 60.

**Impact Factor:**

<b>ISRA (India)</b>	<b>= 3.117</b>	<b>SIS (USA)</b>	<b>= 0.912</b>	<b>ICV (Poland)</b>	<b>= 6.630</b>
<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE)</b>	<b>= 0.829</b>	<b>PIHHI (Russia)</b>	<b>= 0.156</b>	<b>PIF (India)</b>	<b>= 1.940</b>
<b>GIF (Australia)</b>	<b>= 0.564</b>	<b>ESJI (KZ)</b>	<b>= 8.716</b>	<b>IBI (India)</b>	<b>= 4.260</b>
<b>JIF</b>	<b>= 1.500</b>	<b>SJIF (Morocco)</b>	<b>= 5.667</b>	<b>OAJI (USA)</b>	<b>= 0.350</b>

10. Logofet, D. (1907). *Cherez Buxaru. Putevie ocherki po Sredney Azii*. Turkestanskiy sbornik. Tashkent. T. 443. p.38a.; Voenny sbornik. №2. p. 215.
11. Semyonov-Tyan-Shanskiy, V. P. (1913). *Rossiya. Polnoe geograficheskoe opisanie. Turkestanskiy kray*. SPb.: Izd-vo A.F.Devriena. T. XIX.
12. Kun, A. A. (1880). *Ocherki Shagrisebzskego bekvta*. ZIRGO po otdeleniyu etnografii. SPb. T.VI.
13. Agzamova, G. A. (2002). *Shahrisabz – iqtisodiy va madaniy hayot markazi (XVI – XIX asrning birinchi yarmi)*. Shahrisabz shahrining jahon tarixida tutgan o‘rni. Xalqaro ilmiy konferensiya ma’ruzalari tezislari. Toshkent: Fan.
14. (n.d.). O‘zR MDA. 126-jamg‘arma, 1-ro‘yxat, 621-ish, 1-varaq.
15. Maev, N. (1879). *Ocherki gornix bekvst*. Material dlya statistiki Turkestanskogo kraya. SPb. Vp.V.
16. (1888). *Polk. yevreyov. Rekognosirovka puti cherez Djamskiy pereval na Guzar i na Karshi v 1887 g.* // Sbornik geograficheskix, topograficheskix i statisticheskix materialov po Azii. SPb.: Voennaya tipografiya. Vp. XXXVI.
17. Logofet, D. I. (1911). *Buxarskoe xanstvo pod russkim protektoratom*. SPb.: B.I. T. II.
18. Zahiriddin, M. B. (1989). *Boburnoma / Nashrga tayyorlovchi P. Shamsiev*. Toshkent: Yulduzcha.
19. Termiziy, X. S. (1997). *Dastur ul-Muluk / Fors-tojik tilidan erkin tarjima, so‘zboshi, izohlar muallifi J. Esonov*. Toshkent: Adabiyot va san‘at.
20. Sokolov, V. Y. (1957). *Buxara, Samarkand, Kelif v 1813 godu. Publikatsiya iz otrvka «Puteshestvie Mir Izzat Ull v Srednyuyu Aziyu v 1812-1813»* // Trud SAGU. Vp. X. Tashkent: SAGU.
21. Meyendorf, E. K. (1886). *Svedeniya o Buxare* // Turkestanskiy sbornik. (p.169a). SPb. T. 385.
22. (1983). *Zapiski o Buxarskom xanstve*. Otchet P.I.Demezona i I.V.Vitkevicha. Moscow: Nauka.
23. (1959). *Kashkadarinskaya oblast. Ekonomiko-geograficheskaya xarakteristika*. Tr. SAGU. Tashkent: SAGU. T.II. Vp. 156.
24. Litvinov, B. N. (1910). *Karshi* // Turkestanskiy sbornik. Tashkent, 1910–1911. T. 542.
25. Sokolov, Y. A. (1957). *Buxara, Samarkand, Kelif v 1813 godu*. Publikatsii otrvka iz “Puteshestvie Mir Izzat Ull v Srednyuyu Aziyu v 1812-1813 godax” Trud SAGU. Tashkent: Vp. X.
26. Borns, A. (n.d.). *Puteshestvie v Buxaru*. Turkestanskiy sbornik. SPb., T. 38.
27. (n.d.). O‘zR MDA. 1-jamg‘arma, 34-ro‘yxat, 172-ish, 27 orqa, 35-varaqlar.
28. Meyendorf, E. K. (n.d.). *Svedeniya o Buxare*. Turkestanskiy sbornik. T. 385.
29. Maev, N. A. (1875). *Ocherki Buxarskogo xanstva*. Tashkent.
30. Kostenko, L. F. (1871). *Puteshestvie v Buxaru russkoy missii v 1870 godu. S marshrutom ot Tashkenta do Buxari*. Turkestanskiy sbornik. SPb. T. 32.
31. (1894). *Polk. Fedorov. Statisticheskii ocherk Guzarskogo i Kuytangskogo i Kallyukskogo amlyakdarstv Kelifskogo bekvta*. Sbornik geograficheskix, topograficheskix i statisticheskix materialov po Azii. SPb.: Voennaya tipografiya. Vp. LVII.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

SOI: [1.1/TAS](#) DOI: [10.15863/TAS](#)

## International Scientific Journal Theoretical & Applied Science

p-ISSN: 2308-4944 (print) e-ISSN: 2409-0085 (online)

Year: 2019 Issue: 04 Volume: 72

Published: 30.04.2019 <http://T-Science.org>

QR – Issue



QR – Article



**SECTION 21. Pedagogy. Psychology.**  
**Innovations in the field of education.**

**K.A. Tukhtabekov**  
PhD., Docent,  
National University of Uzbekistan,  
Tashkent, Republic of Uzbekistan.  
[kozimazimbek@mail.ru](mailto:kozimazimbek@mail.ru)

## THE SYSTEM OF ACADEMIC DEGREES AND POST-UNIVERSITY EDUCATION IN THE REPUBLIC OF CHINA

**Abstract:** This article will discuss the system of academic degrees and postgraduate education in the Republic of China, their role in building a national education system focused on the twenty-first century.

**Key words:** academic degrees, education system, postgraduate education, Republic of China, professional programs, academic requirements.

**Language:** English

**Citation:** Tukhtabekov, K. A. (2019). The system of academic degrees and post-university education in the republic of China. *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 04 (72), 550-553.

**Soi:** <http://s-o-i.org/1.1/TAS-04-72-74> **Doi:**  <https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2019.04.72.74>

### Introduction

The development of education in China, in particular, postgraduate education is due to a number of government policy documents. This is a long-term strategy for the revival of the country thanks to the development of education and science, formulated in 1995 at the XIV Congress of the Communist Party of China, and approved by the State Council of China in February 1999. "A program of building a national education system focused on the 21st century" [1], and officially promulgated on March 3, 2004. "The program for the development of education for 2003-2007" [2], which defines the main goals, directions and tasks of the development of education in China for the next five years.

### Materials and methods

In the twentieth century, until the formation of the Republic of China, post-graduate education occupied a very small sector in the national education system: only about 200 masters were trained, and the doctoral training was completely absent: all Chinese citizens - holders of a doctoral degree - received it at foreign universities.

After 1949 under the influence of the Soviet education system, a two-year training course for higher pedagogical personnel was introduced, and in 1962 it was accepted three-year postgraduate study. However, during the cultural revolution in the republic of China, the postgraduate education was completely destroyed. Only in 1978, after the

proclamation of the policy of reforms and openness, the restoration of this system had begun: for the first time after a 12-year break, about 10 thousand people out of 63 thousand participating in the exams were accepted for postgraduate programs [3, P. 3-4].

Approved and adopted by the Standing Committee of the State Council "Regulations on academic degrees in the Republic of China" entered into force on January 1, 1981 [4]. It was one of the first laws in the field of education, adopted in "new" China. In accordance with this Regulation, three levels of academic degrees are established in the Republic of China: bachelor, master and doctoral degrees, and the main academic requirements for their applicants are defined.

The Law of the Republic of China on Higher Education, which entered into force on January 1, 1999, confirms the existence in the Republic of China of three academic degrees and several types of higher education programs: short programs (programs of a special course lasting 2-3 years), programs of the main course lasting 4 -5 years, master's degree (2-3 years), doctoral studies (3-4 years).

The higher education system of China includes junior colleges, colleges and universities. In junior colleges only short programs are implemented, while in colleges and universities there are both short and basic higher education programs. Postgraduate programs can be mastered both in universities and in research institutions of the country.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India)	= 3.117	SIS (USA)	= 0.912	ICV (Poland)	= 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE)	= 0.829	PIHHI (Russia)	= 0.156	PIF (India)	= 1.940
GIF (Australia)	= 0.564	ESJI (KZ)	= 8.716	IBI (India)	= 4.260
JIF	= 1.500	SJIF (Morocco)	= 5.667	OAJI (USA)	= 0.350

Major programs lasting 4-6 years are completed with a diploma, which only confirms the successful completion of the program of study in a particular specialty. Only a graduate of a higher education institution authorized by the Committee on Academic Degrees of the State Council of China to award bachelor's degrees in a relevant specialty may be awarded the first academic degree. If a university does not have such a right, its graduate has the right to apply to another institution of higher education with a petition for conferring on a corresponding degree. If a graduate meets the requirements set forth in the "Regulations": he has good academic results, has deep knowledge in fundamental and special disciplines in the direction of training, skills in conducting research or performing special technical work, he can receive the right for an undergraduate certificate to continue education at the postgraduate level [4].

The Committee on Academic Degrees of the State Council of the Republic of China carries out an assessment of the educational and scientific activities of all universities and research institutions that claim or already have such masters and doctoral degrees. In case of bachelor degrees, only with the appropriate accreditation of a university or research institute receive the right to award academic degrees. In 2002 master's degrees had the right to assign 726 universities and research institutions, and 245 universities and colleges and 55 research institutes of China had the right to award doctoral degrees [5, P. 46].

A graduate of a master's course can claim to be awarded a master's degree if, having mastered solid deep knowledge in fundamental disciplines and systematic, special knowledge in the direction of training, skills of conducting research work or independent professional activity, pass all necessary exams and successfully defend the dissertation [3; 4].

A doctoral degree, the highest academic degree established in the Republic of China, is awarded to graduates of doctoral programs of accredited universities or research institutes. The necessary requirements are the successful passing of all established exams and the successful defense of dissertation work. The candidate must demonstrate strong and comprehensive deep knowledge in fundamental disciplines, complete and systematic special knowledge in the direction of training, the ability to conduct independent research and development, as well as creative achievements in science or technology [3; 4].

At the same time, there are temporary rules in China that allow granting degrees to those who were not students of postgraduate programs, however, they meet the requirements for candidates for a master's or doctor's degree. Temporary rules for awarding academic degrees to persons with work, put into effect in 1990. and updated in 1998, set the following requirements for applicants, at the same time

guaranteeing their level of preparation: each applicant must have five years of work experience in the relevant field and printed works containing the main research results in national or foreign scientific journals; pass exams in a foreign language and specialty [5, P. 47].

The catalog of disciplines and specialties of postgraduate education was approved by the Committee of Academic Degrees of the State Council and the Ministry of Education in 1997. There are twelve main areas in this catalog: philosophy, economics, jurisprudence (including political science and sociology), education (including physical education), humanities (including philology, various specialties of art, librarianship), history, natural sciences, engineering sciences, agricultural sciences, management, medicine and military specialties. These areas of training include, inter alia, 88 specialties of master training and 382 specialties of training doctors of science [5, P. 46].

The rapidly developing economy of the country soon demanded the introduction of new academic degrees in areas that were not included in the list: Master of Business Administration, Bachelor and Master of Architecture, Master of Law, Master of Engineering, Master of Education, Master of Science and Doctor of Clinical Medicine, Master of Public Administration, Master and the doctor of veterinary medicine, master and doctor of dentistry, master and doctor of public health.

Currently, at every level of postgraduate education there are both training programs for future university teachers and researchers, as well as professional orientation programs, for example, Master of Business Administration, Master of Engineering, Master of Education, Clinical Doctor [5, P. 46].

As follows from the "Regulations on Academic Degrees in China", there is no academic degree in the Chinese education system, which is awarded after a two-year higher education course. Such an intermediate degree (associated degree) is presented in many educational systems, which are based on the Anglo-American model, like the Chinese educational system. This degree, as a rule, gives its holders the opportunity to continue their education in colleges and universities according to the programs up to graduate studies, taking into account previous training for a bachelor's degree.

Short programs, the so-called special course programs, lasting 3 years, are completed with a certificate (zhuanke certificate), this document does not give its holder the right to qualify for a bachelor's degree, as well as direct access to the magistracy. Holders of such documents, after passing special exams, can only continue their studies in the programs of the basic higher education course (an additional 2 years of study) and only after its completion qualify for a bachelor's degree.



## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India)	= 3.117	SIS (USA)	= 0.912	ICV (Poland)	= 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE)	= 0.829	PИHИ (Russia)	= 0.156	PIF (India)	= 1.940
GIF (Australia)	= 0.564	ESJI (KZ)	= 8.716	IBI (India)	= 4.260
JIF	= 1.500	SJIF (Morocco)	= 5.667	OAJI (USA)	= 0.350

The two-year professional programs implemented in the higher technical colleges of China are also completed only by the award of a diploma, which is essentially a professional certificate. Holders of such qualifications usually enter the labor market in the role of mid-level specialists in the industry and services: technicians, managers, nurses, secretaries, and their lack of an academic degree limits their future educational opportunities.

In the context of the dynamic development of vocational education and the formation of the binary system of higher education, the Ministry of Education of the Republic of China is conducting an experiment to introduce basic programs in higher vocational schools and establish a professional bachelor's degree in this system. The implementation of such professional degrees in Chinese higher education echoes the processes caused by the development of the Bologna process in Europe. It can be assumed that in the near future, with the successful completion of the experiment, such a degree will be introduced by law. The policies and principles of admission to postgraduate programs are developed by the Ministry of Education in accordance with the requirements of the economy and social development of the country, and the admission plan is determined jointly by the Ministry of Education and the State Planning Commission.

Admission to postgraduate programs is based on the results of entrance exams, organized in January of each year. These examinations are conducted in two stages: the time and place of the national (written) entrance examinations are determined by the Ministry of Education, and the host university or research institute is responsible for conducting the second stage. National entrance exams consist of the following tests: political theory, foreign languages and three professional disciplines, while the examination materials on the first two and partly on basic disciplines are prepared by the Ministry of Education. For the entrance exams for doctoral programs, all examination certificates for the specialty are prepared only at the relevant host institution. For university graduates who have practical work experience in the specialty of at least four years, separate entrance exams for master's programs supervised by the Ministry of Education are introduced.

With a change in 1999 in the past years, the admission plan for postgraduate programs continued to increase as well. According to the Ministry of

Education in 2004. 4.2 million applicants were admitted to universities in the country, and in 2005, 360 thousand people will be able to enter postgraduate programs, which is for 34 and 157 thousand more than in 2004 and 2002. The quota of admission to candidates for a master's degree mainly changes, and admission to doctoral programs will increase slightly. Currently, 794.5 thousand people are enrolled in postgraduate programs, of which 143.5 thousand are doctoral students [8].

The increase of a number of students of master's programs is associated primarily with the lack of highly qualified teaching staff in universities of the country, which negatively affects the level of quality of higher education. About half of Chinese students studying abroad are postgraduate students: for example, about 80% of Chinese students are enrolled in postgraduate programs in US universities over the past few years. In 2003/2004, despite a slight decline in the number of Chinese students in the United States, in general, corresponding to the general trend for a number of other states, more than 50 thousand people were enrolled in master's and doctoral programs [9]. The selection of such programs by Chinese students in universities in the UK, Germany, France, Australia is facilitated by bilateral agreements signed by China over the past two years on the mutual recognition of higher education qualifications. In China in 2003, there were 820 thousand masters of sciences and 110 thousand people with a doctoral degree [8], however, despite the successes of the development of postgraduate education in the Republic of China, these are still very small figures for a state with a population of almost 1.4 billion people.

### Conclusion

The stock results in conclusion can be said a systematic increase in funding the material base of research and the salaries of research assistants contributes to the development of the scientific potential of China as a whole. Only for 2007-2011 Costs of RTD increased 2.3 times. Spending on science rose from less than 1% of gross domestic product at the turn of the century to 2.1% in 2013. The number of researchers in the PRC has now exceeded that of the USA. Thus, we are facing a relatively young, rapidly developing, very large scientific and technical complex, which is difficult to judge by the standards of other countries.

**Impact Factor:**

<b>ISRA (India)</b>	<b>= 3.117</b>	<b>SIS (USA)</b>	<b>= 0.912</b>	<b>ICV (Poland)</b>	<b>= 6.630</b>
<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE)</b>	<b>= 0.829</b>	<b>PIHHI (Russia)</b>	<b>= 0.156</b>	<b>PIF (India)</b>	<b>= 1.940</b>
<b>GIF (Australia)</b>	<b>= 0.564</b>	<b>ESJI (KZ)</b>	<b>= 8.716</b>	<b>IBI (India)</b>	<b>= 4.260</b>
<b>JIF</b>	<b>= 1.500</b>	<b>SJIF (Morocco)</b>	<b>= 5.667</b>	<b>OAJI (USA)</b>	<b>= 0.350</b>

**References:**

1. (1999). *Action Plan for Vitalizing Education for the 21st Century (People's Republic of China)*, Ministry of Education, December 24, 1998, Endorsed by State Council, January 13, 1999, Published February 25, 1999.
2. (2004). *The 2003-2007 Action Plan for Invigorating Education*, Ministry of Education, March 3, 2004.
3. (1998). *Degree and Graduate Education in China*. – Beijing: Department of International Cooperation & Exchanges; Ministry of Education; The People's Republic of China. pp.24.
4. (1980, February 12). *Regulations of the People's Republic of China on Academic Degrees*. Standing Committee of the National People's Congress.
5. (2003). *Final Report. The Regional Convention on the Recognition of Studies, Diplomas and Degrees in Higher Education in Asia and Pacific*. Seventh Session of the Regional Committee, Perth, Australia, p.167, p.45-53.
6. (2004). *Quality Assurance and Accreditation in Higher Education in East Asia and Pacific/* World Bank, Working Paper Series, Paper No. 2004-6, August 2004, p.64.
7. (2003). *OECD Review of Financing and Quality Assurance Reform in Higher Education in The People's Republic of China*, CCNM/EDU 2, pp.24-25.
8. (n.d.). *Kitayskiy informatsionnyy Internet-tsentr*. <http://www.china.org.cn/146835>
9. (2004). *Open Doors – 2004. Annual report on international student mobility*. The Institute of International Education, USA.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
PIHII (Russia) = 0.156  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.716  
SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

SOI: [1.1/TAS](#) DOI: [10.15863/TAS](#)

## International Scientific Journal Theoretical & Applied Science

p-ISSN: 2308-4944 (print) e-ISSN: 2409-0085 (online)

Year: 2019 Issue: 04 Volume: 72

Published: 30.04.2019 <http://T-Science.org>

SECTION 13. Geography. History. Oceanology.  
Meteorology.

QR – Issue



QR – Article



U.A. Usarov  
PhD researcher,  
National University of Uzbekistan,  
Tashkent, Republic of Uzbekistan  
[umidjon.usarov@mail.ru](mailto:umidjon.usarov@mail.ru)

A.B. Sharipova  
Student,  
National University of Uzbekistan,  
Tashkent, Republic of Uzbekistan

## IN WRITTEN COURSES OF THE MIDDLE AGES TOPONYMS REGARDING TO THE HISTORY OF FARMING AND IRRIGATION SYSTEM OF BOTTOM ZARAFSHAN OASIS

**Abstract:** This article analyzes the culture of farming and the history of land and water relations, as well as the system of irrigation. Particular attention is paid to the study of sources of the Middle Ages related to the land and water relations in the Bukhara oasis.

**Key words:** Central Asia, Bukhara oasis, Mawarannahr (Transoxiana), Amu Darya, Syr Darya, Zarafshan, irrigation system, land and water relations, Samanid Empire, "History of Bukhara", "Hudud al-Alam", "Kitab Surat al-Ard" ("Book of the Description of the Earth"), "Baburnama".

**Language:** English

**Citation:** Usarov, U. A., & Sharipova, A. B. (2019). In written courses of the middle ages toponyms regarding to the history of farming and irrigation system of bottom Zarafshan oasis. *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 04 (72), 554-556.

**Soi:** <http://s-o-i.org/1.1/TAS-04-72-75> **Doi:**  <https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2019.04.72.75>

### Introduction

Culture of farming which was adapted for system of artificial irrigation came into existence in the bottom of Amu Darya, Syr Darya, Zarafshan and other rivers which were considered as great water sources in the territory of Central Asia long since. Local peoples possessed a lot of experiments and methods which was based on productive using from earth and water resources, as a result of this, sowing areas, gardens and all branches of agriculture were extended and developed in the oasises.

Long since in written sources was admitted as one of the largest centers, where socio-economical and cultural relations were developed, in Central Asia. In the East had its place as commerce and handicrafting made progress there. Especially, Bukhara city played a significant role as an administrative center in the political life of the country.

### Materials and methods

History of irrigation culture of the oasis was reflected in the written courses which were created in the medieval centuries and written by Arabic historians too. These courses include "History of Bukhara" by Abu Bakr Mukhammad ibn Ja'far an-Narshakhiy, "Hudud al-'Alam" (its author is unknown), "Kitab Surat al-Ard" ("the book of Description of the Earth") by Ibn Khavkal, "Baburnama" by Zakhiriddin Mukhammad Babur, "Abdullanama" by Khofiz Tanish al-Bukhari and other books[1].

According to these works, numerous different-sized urban and rural areas were located in the oasis of the bottom Zarafshan and its surroundings that in these territories agriculture, cattle-raising, handicrafting efficiently made progress. Particularly, in the oasis agriculture were improved, as a result of this, abundant harvest was gathered. The oasis of the bottom Zarafshan and its surrounding rural areas were well provided with the water.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

At the bottom of Zarafshan oasis about important historical events, that is to say, from appearance of hunting, fishing industry and farming, creation of large ancient rural areas such as, Navmichkand, Poykand, Afshona, Varakhsha, Romitan, Vardona whose names were written, till the construction of Bukhara city many significant data were stated in the book named after “History of Bukhara” by Abu Bakr Mukhammad ibn Ja’far an-Narshakhiy[2, P. 81-173].

Additionally, in this book a lot of information was given about land and water relations and we can see the following definitions: “dehkan”, - that is, “the mayor of the rural areas”, working farmers – “kashovarz”- that is, kushchi who ploughs the earth, “kadivar” –rural areas’ people who were subordinate to rich land owners. In this source precious facts were stated about irrigator system of the bottom of Zarafshan oasis, rural areas which are situated in the bank of large canals, gardens, rabats and kushks. Especially, in VIII –XII centuries names of the hydrotoponyms were written for instance, Karmana, Shapurkam, Kharkonat ul-Ulyo, Kharkonrud, Ovkhirfar, Somjan, Baykonrud, Faroviz is-Suflo or Komil Daymun, Avan, Kayfur, Rudi Zar which provided with water Zarafshan oasis[2. P. 110-111].

Mukhammad Narshakhiy noted a lot of precious information about history of coming to existence of canals and streams which deliver water in the oasis too. To illustrate, he told about history of being discovered of Shapirkam hydrotoponym that Shapirkam was one of the largest irrigation canals in the bottom of Zarafshan oasis and local people of Bukhara named as Shafirkam. According to the author, one of the successors of Kisro (Khisrav I (531-578) or Khisrav II (590-628) who are belonging to Sasanid dynasty, quarreled with his father and he came to Bukhara region. His name was “Shapur”. A word of “Pur” means “son” in Iran language. When he came to Bukhara, Bukharkhudot who governed the bottom of Zarafshan oasis accepted very well. Shapur loved hunting. One day he started to hunt and suddenly reached in the direction of Shapirkam. At then, there were no rural area and comfortable destination, only summer pasture and the spot where people hunted were available. Shapur liked this territory and asked for Bukharkhudat with favour that he should give this area to Shapur as a share because Shapur aimed to develop it. After he accepted this land, he ordered to dig a large irrigation canal. Shapur gave his name for it and was started to be named as “Shapirkam”. Afterwards, on the bank of this irrigation canal villages and castles were built [2, P. 110].

Bukhara was the largest and comfortable city, very rich in luxuries and the capital of Samanid Empire which ruled the East. It was said in the historical geographical book of “Hudud al-‘Alam”(its author is unknown): “Its climate is wet, fruit and

running water is very much” [3, P. 66]. In addition, in this source it was written that people of the oasis were expert shot and able to score a victory; high-quality woolen carpet, thick woolen fabric, prayer-mat were prepared; pashmin and sho’ra were produced as well as merchandised to other places. Moreover, territory of the bottom Zarafshan oasis is horizontal twelve farsang and vertical twelve farsang, its circumference was surrounded with uninterrupted wall together with its all rabats and rural areas were situated inside the wall[4, P. 11-12].

We can see in the book of “Hudud al-‘Alam” the following facts: “Four rivers starts to flow mountainous areas of Middle Butamon (Zarafshan mountain) of Bukhara river (Zarafshan river), after six farsang flows, four of them turns round batixi (lake) by joining and it is called “Small river”. Sarushana is the beginning of the river, it runs in Samarkand and Sugd areas as well as the center of bottom of Zarafshan oasis and one part of water is spent at sowing areas of Bukhara”[4, P. 12]. Additionally, in the source it was told that several tributaries of Zarafshan river are poured in Amu Darya. Generally, it was emphasized in the source that guarantee of water was well organized in the oasis. This played a main role for development of farming, gardening, fielding.

Information related to irrigation system of Bukhara oasis was given in the book of “Kitab Surat al-Ard” (“the book of Description of the Earth”) by arabic geographer and historian scientist Ibn Khavkal. In the source it was lighted about irrigation ditches which stretches out Bukhara city and Bukhara oasis, their geographic location, areas which was provided with water[5, P 40-51]. Particularly, it was stated that Bukhara city took running water the largest Bukhara river (it is considered zarafshan river) which started to flow from Samarkand, from this river several irrigation ditches were digged to the city, one of them is named “Fashirdiza” (Fashirdiza or Fashidiza – according to the sources, it is a name of the village close to Bukhara. There is sogdian word - “diza” in the structure of the name of irrigation ditch and village. Generally, the fortress was situated in this village.), it flew by the area of “Darb Murdkashon” and “Juybar Ibrakhim” gates and reached “Bob al-Bal’amin” gate and from that location it was poured the irrigation ditch whose is “Navkanda” (Navkanda – remain water of all irrigation ditches of Bukhara city flew into this ditch. Navkanda means “new irrigation ditch” in sugdian language). This irrigation ditch provided approximately two thousand gardens which was located in its surrounding, castles and other areas with water [5, P. 42]. It is clear that irrigation system of the oasis was well organized.

It was written in the source that numerous irrigation ditches such as, Juybar Bokor, Juybar al-Kavoririyyn, Ju-yi Gashadj, Nahr Baikand, Navkada, at-Tahuna, nahr Kushna, Raboh, ar-Registon, Nahr

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

Zugorkanda[5, P. 42-44] provided castles, gardens and many areas of Bukhara city with water.

Ibn Khavkal told that Nahr as-Sugd (it is a sugdian name of Zarafshan river) which descends from mountainous areas of al-Buttam (Al-Buttam – Arabic name of mountainous area which is situated in the bottom trend of Zarafshan river. It written as Buttamon in Persian sources. Beginning of Bukhara river was named as Central Butamon (Buttamon) in the book of Hudud ul-olam. According to this book, it was started from Zarafshan mountainous area) and flows to the bottom of Zarafshan oasis by Samarkand provided the bottom of Zarafshan oasis with water. A lot of irrigation ditches which were digged from Nahr as-Sugd watered rural areas and plantions which is situated in the wall of Bukhara. For example, Bukhara and its surroundings were watered by several large irrigation ditches like Shafirkom, Khargon- rud, najor Xiftar, Nahr Jarg, Navkanda, nahr Barasha, Nahr Kushna, Nahr ar-Romiton, Bottom farovuz, Arvon, Top Farovuz, Khoma Nahr Navkada. As water was very much in the irrigation ditches, boats swam too[5, P. 45-46]. Farming of villages of the bottom of Zarafshan oasis was supplied with water by these irrigation ditches.

Facts about irrigation sytem of the bottom of Zarafshan oasis, problems of farming was stated in the book of “Baburnama” by Zakhiriddin Mukhammad Babur[6, P. 61]. In this source it was noted that Bukhara oasis was one of the largest centres of Mawarannahr in XV century. Different kind of fruits

and vegetables were planted in Bukhara and its regions. Generally, Zakhiriddin Mukhammad Babur said: “There are not very many and delicious melons like melons of Bukhara in Mawarannahr... you can see various melons and they are quite tasty” [7, P. 112]. It is clear from these facts that farming was developed extremely well in the bottom of Zarafshan oasis in the Middle ages.

### Conclusion

To recapitulate, we can learn about comfortable natural-geographic condition of the bottom of Zarafshan oasis, sources of rich water by researching toponyms related to history of farming and irrigation of the oasis. From ancient periods a basic occupation of population of Central Asia, especially population of Zarafshan oasis was farming which was related to artificial watering system. Most of the people of Zarafshan oasis inhabited in the rural areas, they did the main branches of agriculture, that is, farming, gardening, fielding. In addition, experienced peoples of Central Asia had typical methods of watering, these methods helped to use cleverly water sources of fertile soils, rivers and irrigation ditches. We can see it by models of development of irrigation technics which is not available in other areas. By being based on names of places which was aforementioned in the sources, it is concluded that farming and irrigation system was well organized in the territory of the bottom of Zarafshan oasis which was one of the largest socio-economical centers of Central Asia.

### References:

1. Abu Bakr Mukhammad ibn Ja'far an-Narshakhiy (1991). *History of Bukhara. Translation from Persia by A.Rasulev*. Tashkent: Kamalak.
2. (2007). *Hudud ul-olam*. Tashkent.: Uzbekistan, 2007. (O.Buriev. Translation from Persia, the author of introduction, definitions and indication of toponyms).
3. (2011). *Ibn Havkal. Kitab surat al-Ard.–* Tashkent: National encyclopedia of Uzbekistan. (SH.K.Kamoliddinov is the author of definitions and translation from Arabic language).
4. Hofiz Tanish al-Bukhariy (2000). *Abdullanama* (“Sharafnomayi shohiy”). Chapter I and II. Translation from Persia by S.Mirzaev va Y.Hakimjonov. Tashkent: Sharq.
5. Zakhiriddin Muhammad Babur (1990). *Baburnama*. Tashkent.: Yulduzcha.
6. Abu Bakr Mukhammad ibn Ja'far an-Narshaxiy (1991). *History of Bukhara*. (pp.81-173). Tashkent, Kamalak.
7. Usarov, U. A. (2015). *Izuchenie toponimov Sredney Azii, kak vazhneyshikh istoricheskikh istochnikov*. VII mezhdunarodnaya nauchno-prakticheskaya konferentsiya: Otechestvennaya nauka v epokhu izmeneniy: postulaty proshlogo i teorii novogo vremeni. № 2, chast' 9. (p.66). Ekaterinburg.
8. (2008). *Hudud ul–olam. Translation from Persia by O.Buriev*. (p.11-12). Tashkent, Uzbekistan.
9. (2011). *Ibn Havkal. Kitob surat al-ard*. (pp.40-51). Tashkent: National encyclopedia of Uzbekistan.
10. Zakhiriddin, M. B. (1990). *Baburnama*. (p.61). Tashkent.: Yulduzcha.
11. Buriev, O. (2015). *Pages of historical geography of Central Asia* (research of written sources and translations). (p.112). Tashkent: Tafakkur.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHII (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

SOI: [1.1/TAS](#) DOI: [10.15863/TAS](#)

## International Scientific Journal Theoretical & Applied Science

p-ISSN: 2308-4944 (print) e-ISSN: 2409-0085 (online)

Year: 2019 Issue: 04 Volume: 72

Published: 30.04.2019 <http://T-Science.org>

QR – Issue



QR – Article



Lola Jalilovna Jalilova

Senior teacher of «English literature» department,  
Bukhara State University

Akhtam Uktamovich Rajabov

teacher of “Languages” department  
Bukhara branch of TIIMA, Uzbekistan  
[axtamr@inbox.ru](mailto:axtamr@inbox.ru)

UDC 82-2

## COMIC CREATION MEANS IN JAMES THURBER'S NOVEL “THE SECRET LIFE OF WALTER MITTY”

**Abstract:** The given article deals with comic creation tools in the novel of American humorist James Thurber “The Secret Life of Walter Mitty”. A wide range of syntactical and lexical means as parallelism, paradox, irony, neologisms, malapropisms and other are considered. Examples from the original literary text that prove theoretical considerations, as well as various symbols to depict the character and inner world of the main hero of the given novel are analyzed.

**Key words:** comic creation tools, syntactical and lexical means, parallelism, paradox, irony, neologisms, malapropisms

**Language:** Russian

**Citation:** Jalilova, L. J., & Rajabov, A. U. (2019). Comic creation means in James Thurber's novel “the secret life of Walter Mitty”. *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 04 (72), 557-560.

**Soi:** <http://s-o-i.org/1.1/TAS-04-72-76> **Doi:**  <https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2019.04.72.76>

## СРЕДСТВА СОЗДАНИЯ КОМИЧЕСКОГО В РАССКАЗЕ ДЖЕЙМСА ТЕРБЕРА «ТАЙНАЯ ЖИЗНЬ УОЛТЕРА МИТТИ»

**Аннотация:** В данной статье рассматриваются средства создания комического в рассказе американского сатирика Дж.Тэрбера «Тайная жизнь Уолтера Митти». Рассмотрены разнообразные синтаксические и лексические средства, такие как параллелизм, парадокс, ирония, неологизмы, малапропизмы и др. Проанализированы конкретные примеры с оригинального художественного текста, подтверждающие теоретические рассуждения, а также многочисленные символы для изображения характера и внутреннего мира главного героя.

**Ключевые слова:** средства создания комического, синтаксические и лексические средства, параллелизм, парадокс, ирония, неологизмы, малапропизмы

### Introduction

Секрет непрерывно долгой жизни рассказа Джеймса Тербера «Тайная жизнь Уолтера Митти» заключается в его полной универсальности. Независимо от того, насколько знаменитым, богатым и успешным за пределами ваших самых смелых мечтаний можно стать, каждый человек ведёт тайную фантазийную жизнь. Каждый переживает те моменты в течение дня, когда слово, звук, запах или память стимулируют кратковременное бегство из реальности в ту область воображения, где все возможно.

Короткий, комический, ироничный рассказ от третьего лица, действие которого происходит в Коннектикуте около 1938 года о внутреннем конфликте главного героя, что является результатом желания Уолтера быть мужественным человеком и реальностью его жизни, а именно того, что он старый и слабый человек, далеко не идеальный пример мужественности.

При этом секретная жизнь воображения Уолтера Митти у Джеймса Тербера - это очень специфический тип побега, который совпадает с очень специфической природой отношений. Эта

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	ПИИЦ (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

природа несколько изменилась с тех пор, как эта история была впервые опубликована в *New Yorker magazine* 18 марта 1939 года, но сегодня она достаточно универсальна. «Уолтер Митти» стал метафорой для человека с богатой и разнообразной жизнью в его разуме, который резко контрастирует с мирской реальностью, которую все могут ясно видеть, но, опять же, Уолтер Митти, которого создал Тербер является знаковым представлением довольно конкретного примера этого универсального типа: он – муж-подкаблучник.

### Materials and Methods

Мужья с подбитыми клыками до сих пор существуют примерно в том же приблизительном проценте населения, что и во времена Тербера. Конечно, социологические и психологические достижения с тех пор внесли определенный вклад в преобразование образа этого стереотипа. Нужно отметить, что покорный муж, женившийся на доминирующей жене, больше не является одним из центральных тем комедии. В то время, когда Тербер опубликовал свой короткий рассказ, Митти не считался таким универсальным представителем силы воображения, чтобы позволить обычным людям избежать тихой отчаянной жизни. В 1939 году читатели сразу же признали Митти гораздо более точной пародией на мужа, отчаянно ищущего способ установить автономию и индивидуальность перед личностью, слишком желающей подчиниться доминирующей личности своей жены.

Ирония в данном произведении отчетливо прослеживается в следующем: В своих фантазиях Уолтер Митти - сильный человек, который контролирует свою жизнь и может делать все, что захочет. В действительности, однако, его контролирует жена, человек, который намного сильнее, чем он, и который проявляет гораздо более сильный характер, чем Уолтер. Несмотря на то, что они женаты, они едва знакомы, и порой Уолтер кажется неспособным узнать свою жену. Это представляется ироничным в истории, поскольку Уолтер хочет оставить впечатление человека героя. «Надень перчатки»-Миссис Митти напоминает Уолтеру, что надо надевать перчатки, и говорит, что он уже не молодой человек и нуждается в защите. Уолтер возражает и планирует снять перчатки, но надевает их вместо этого.

В другой из своих фантазий Уолтер представляет себя знаменитым доктором, Доктором Вальтером, которого хвалят коллеги и просят провести трудные операции. В действительности, однако, Уолтер совсем не профессиональный врач, и когда он просыпается от своей фантазии, то понимает, что он припаркован не в том месте. Затем ему помогает

молодой дежурный, который паркует машину Уолтера в нужном месте.

Следующим примером иронии является смущающий момент в жизни Уолтера, когда он пытался снять цепи с шин своей машины, и вместо того, чтобы сделать это успешно, он запутался в них и не смог выбраться. Его жена и человек, который помог Уолтеру выбраться из цепей, долго смеялись над ним и, учитывая тот факт, что Уолтер продолжал настаивать на том, что все под контролем этот пример является яркой иронией.

Уолтер Митти стал именем нарицательным для определенного типа личности, в частности для определенного типа мужчин. В самом деле, одно из долговременных наследий короткого рассказа Тербера заключается в том, что на него почти всегда ссылаются т.к. в основе истории лежит вопрос о мужественности. Уолтер Митти никогда не пользуется возможностью воплотить в жизнь свои фантазии и восстановить свою мужественность. В жизни Митти фантазийный мир - это фантазийный мир, а реальный мир - это реальный мир, и они никогда не встретятся.

Джеймс Тербер использует многочисленные символы для изображения характера и внутреннего мира главного героя. Нужно отметить что философия рассматривает символ (от греч., «бросание, метание совместно несколькими лицами чего-либо»; «знак, опознавательная примета») как «знак, в понятие которого входят, не поглощая его, художественный образ, или аллегория, или сравнение» [1. С.449]. Философское осмысление понятия символа восходит к античности; именно с античной культурой нередко принято связывать само появление отвлеченных смыслов, абстрактного мышления. Платон дал целостную трактовку символа как интуитивно постигаемого указания на высшую идеальную форму объекта. Смысл символа, согласно греческому определению, - быть разделением единого и единением двойственности. Рассмотрим следующие символы в новелле: **Машина**. Автомобиль издавна считается символом силы и мужественности. Воображаемые приключения Митти в основном происходят в автомобиле и только вторжения его жены в мир фантазий мешают его славе. Здесь же происходит встреча с парковщиком, которая также показывает отнюдь не его мужественность. Таким образом, автомобиль становится символом слабости Уолтера в его реальной жизни. **Бахилы**. Настойчивая миссис Митти, настаивающая на том, чтобы Уолтер носил бахилы, является еще одним свидетельством ее контроля над ним. Таким образом, бахилы символизируют ложные покровы, скрывающие истинную сущность Уолтера, которую он, в свою очередь, скрывает в свой фантастический мир. «Full Speed Ahead

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	РИИЦ (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

(Вперед на полной скорости)» этот призыв Командующего к тому, чтобы все двигатели включились на полной скорости почти в тот самый момент, когда миссис Митти в реальной жизни призывает Уолтера прекратить ехать так быстро, является ироническим символом всей его жизни. Даже его захватывающая фантазийная жизнь находится под контролем его жены. Full Speed Ahead «Вперед на полной скорости», таким образом, сопоставляется как символ навязчивой способности миссис Митти доминировать над своим мужем как в его мире фантазий, так и вне ее. **Носовой платок.** «*To hell with the handkerchief*» («К черту носовой платок») - это последние слова, которые произнес Уолтер, прежде чем история закончится. Он находится полностью в своей фантазийной жизни, стоя перед расстрелом. Платок приобретает здесь статус символа как воплощение всего, о чем мечтает Уолтер. Его отказ носить носовой платок и смотреть в лицо тем, кто хочет вызвать окончательное опустошение его мечтаний. В речевом оформлении произведения проявляется непосредственно авторский стиль писателя, его творческая манера. «Мы можем не только определить отношение писателя к изображаемому им миру, но и рассмотреть особенности его письма в соответствии с его взглядами на те или иные вещи, мировоззрением, какими - то психологическими моментами, обстоятельствами, в связи с которыми было написано произведение» (Гудзий 1955:318). В совокупности все это позволяет понять замысел автора. Рассмотрим имплементацию метафоры и сравнения. «Метафора - это уравнение, а сравнение - приближение. Сравнение сравнивает две вещи, чтобы создать смысл, в то время как метафора - это фигура речи, которая использует что-то для обозначения чего-то другого.»[2. С.54] Например: "*She seemed grossly unfamiliar, like a strange woman who had yelled at him in a crowd.*" («Она казалась совершенно незнакомой, как странная женщина, которая кричала на него в толпе».) [4.] Это сравнение очень показательное. Женщина, которая кажется незнакомой и странной для Уолтера, является его собственной женой. Автор использует литературный прием сравнения, чтобы раскрыть, насколько глубоко в его иллюзии и фантазии Уолтер способен погрузиться, чтобы вырваться из мирской реальности. "*The Commander's voice was like thin ice breaking.*" («Голос командира был похож на ломкий лед».)[4.] Самая первая строка истории - «Мы проходим» - а затем первое сравнение в рассказе. Сравнительное описание того, как звучит голос Командера, служит двум очень важным целям. Во-первых, это создает иллюзию того, что должно быть прочитано, является кратким сюжетом, в значительной степени

зависящим от метафорических описательных сокращений. И, что еще более важно, оно дает представление о разуме Митти, который, несомненно, прочитал десятки, сотни и, возможно, даже тысячи боевиков, сильно зависящих от метафорических описательных стенографий. "*Ta-pocketa-pocketa-pocketa-pocketa-pocketa.*" [4.] Бегущая метафора, которая также очень важна. Это звук, издаваемый автомобилем Уолтера в реальной жизни. В качестве метафоры, это повторяющийся мотив, повторяющийся в повествовании звук, производимый различными типами механизмов в фантазиях Митти. Значение здесь заключается в том, как реальность звука соединяется с метафорическим символизмом иллюзии, чтобы предположить, что в этой соединительной ткани действительно может быть ядро истины. "*They went out through there volving doors that made a faintly derisive whistling sound when you pushed them.*" («Они вышли через вращающиеся двери, которые издавали слегка насмешливый свистящий звук, когда ты их толкал») [4.]

Это интересный случай метафорического языка. Здесь используется олицетворение, двери наделены способностью выражать человеческие эмоции: в данном случае презрение. То, что делает его захватывающим, - то, что язык абсолютно лишен любого признака, что это выразительное ощущение является просто результатом воображения Уолтера. "*Walter Mitty the Undefeated*" ("Уолтер Митти Непобедимый") [4.] Окончательный образ этой истории - метафора: Уолтер Митти, непокоренный и несломленный. Гордый и презрительный к другим. Неисповедим. Конечно, это чистая метафора, проблеск сломанного человека с комплексом неполноценности. История заканчивается метафорой, которая даёт надежду, что, может быть, возможно, просто наступит день, когда Уолтер найдет смелость, которую он проявляет, в своей голове и начнет действовать. Сцены реальности, питающие его иллюзии, говорят об обратном. Уолтер Митти Непобедимый не может быть чем-то иным, кроме как метафорическим в оригинальной истории Тербера. Как ни странно, историю, таким образом, удастся закончить и счастливо, и несчастливо одновременно.

Уолтер Митти обладает впечатляющим вниманием к деталям при создании фантазий на лету. Менее чем за 30 слов Тербер создает полностью осознанный образ и манеры поведения, которую он просцирует под давлением. Эффективное средство, с помощью которого Тербер передает ограничения знаний Уолтера Митти в контексте неограниченного пространства его воображения, заключается в том, что каждый должен изобрести слова, которые звучат аутентично, когда у него нет опыта



## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	РИИЦ (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

использования жаргона или терминологии. Придуманый жаргон, подобный «*Obstreosis of the ductal tract*» («Обструзу протокового тракта») [4.], звучит так, как будто это может быть достаточно реальным, чтобы убедить непрофессионала, в то время как малапропизмы, такие как «*streptothricosis*» стрептотрикоз (болезнь животных) и «*coreopsis*» кореопсис (цветок) в его фантазии в операционной, рискуют выдать его даже тем, кто не знаком с медицинской терминологией.

Следующим средством создания комического в новелле является парадокс «Парадокс - 1. Странное, расходящееся с общепринятым мнением, высказывание, а также мнение, противоречащее (иногда только на первый взгляд) здравому смыслу. Говорить парадоксами. 2. Явление, кажущееся невероятным и неожиданным, прил. парадоксальный.»[3.с.233]

Жизнь Уолтера парадоксальна в том смысле, что его сверстники расценивали то, что он хотел

больше всего на свете. К сожалению, он был не кем-то, а другим, и другие, вместо того, чтобы хвалить его, высмеивали его и критиковали его. У Уолтера есть множество фантазий, в которых он мечтает стать мужественным или уважаемым человеком. В действительности, однако, это было не так, и поэтому Уолтер предавался этим фантазиям, чтобы чувствовать себя лучше. Проведя параллель между тем, кем был Уолтер, и кем он хотел быть, можно прийти к выводу, что был он человеком, недовольным своей жизнью, который страдал из-за того, что чувствовал себя неадекватным и недооцененным.

## Conclusion

Таким образом, речевая характеристика важна не только в раскрытии психологических особенностей персонажа и конкретной исторической эпохи, но и помогает писателю донести до читателя главную мысль произведения.

## References:

1. (1996). *Sovremennyy filosofskiy slovar'*.
2. Arnol'd, I. V. (2002). *Stilistika. Sovremennyy angliyskiy yazyk: Uchebnik dlya vuzov – 5-e izd., ispr. i dop.* Moscow: Flinta: Nauka.
3. (1993). *Sovremennyy slovar' inostrannykh slov.*
4. Terber, Dzh. (n.d.). *Taynaya zhizn' Uoltera Mitti*, LitMir – Elektronnaya. Biblioteka. Retrieved 2019, from <https://www.litmir.me>
5. Abulkhanova Slavskaya, K.A. (1980). *Activity and psychology of personality.* (p.335). Moscow: Education.
6. Arkhangelsk, S. I. (1980). *Educational process in higher education. His natural foundations and methods.* (p.368). Moscow: Higher school.
7. Efremova, S. N. (1997). *Interaction of the teacher and students of Junior courses as a condition of formation of future teachers: autoref. dis. cand. PED. sciences'.* (p.17). Moscow.
8. Vesselinov, R., Grego, J. (n.d.). *Duolingo Effectiveness Study. Final Report.* Retrieved 2019, from [http://static.duolingo.com/s3/DuolingoReport\\_Final.pdf](http://static.duolingo.com/s3/DuolingoReport_Final.pdf)
9. Vasilenko, K. (1999). How to learn a foreign language without going abroad. *Education abroad, № 2.*
10. Polat, E. S. (2000). *New pedagogical and information technologies in education.* (p.64). Moscow: Academy.
11. Farhodjonovna, F. N. (2017). Spiritual education of young in the context of globalization. *Mir nauki i obrazovaniya, № 1 (9).*

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

SOI: [1.1/TAS](http://s-o-i.org/1.1/TAS) DOI: [10.15863/TAS](https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS)

## International Scientific Journal Theoretical & Applied Science

p-ISSN: 2308-4944 (print) e-ISSN: 2409-0085 (online)

Year: 2019 Issue: 04 Volume: 72

Published: 30.04.2019 <http://T-Science.org>

QR – Issue



QR – Article



Nargiza Shukhratovna Saloydinova

Department of «Foreign and uzbek languages»  
Tashkent architectural and civil engineering institute  
[f.nodira@inbox.uz](mailto:f.nodira@inbox.uz)

UDC 81-13

## THE DIFFICULTY OF READING AND TRANSLATING SCIENTIFIC CONSTRUCTION OF TEXTS IN THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE

**Abstract:** Given article presents attempts to reveal the strategies that would be effective in conducting English classes through terminological words. It is being discussed the advantages and effective outcomes of teaching language through teaching translation of special words in order to develop students language skills. The information about importance and effective ways of translating special English is presented.

The design of the article Introduction where the aim and tasks of the research have been proved from theoretical point of view. There are discussed the effective ways of improving speaking skills of engineering students in technical English classes.

**Key words:** activity, comprehension, communication, language teaching, instruction, skill, strategy, term, speaking

**Language:** Russian

**Citation:** Saloydinova, N. S. (2019). The difficulty of reading and translating scientific construction of texts in the English language. *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 04 (72), 561-564.

**Soi:** <http://s-o-i.org/1.1/TAS-04-72-77> **Doi:**  <https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2019.04.72.77>

### ТРУДНОСТИ ЧТЕНИЯ И ПЕРЕВОДА НАУЧНО-СТРОИТЕЛЬНЫХ ТЕКСТОВ В АНГЛИЙСКОМ ЯЗЫКЕ

**Аннотация:** Данная статья анализирует и даёт информацию о переводе и чтении научно-технического и строительного термина и поможет избежать ошибки при переводе в уроках английского языка. Она актуальна в преподавании предметов по специальности, а также в ней рассматриваются некоторые слова, которые имели древние значения с другим смыслом. Но со временем изменились и начались переводиться совсем по-другому.

В ней рассмотрены цели и задачи теоретических значений. Корректный перевод технического и строительного текста.

**Ключевые слова:** деятельность, коммуникация, язык, преподавания, навыки, стратегия, термин, грамматика.

#### Introduction

Терминология строительства и строительных технологий английского языка относится к числу прикладных термин систем, вследствие чего динамика пополнения ее лексического фонда напрямую зависит от закономерностей развития референтной производственной сферы. Корреляция данной лексической подсистемы с научными теориями и концепциями опосредована сферой применения последних в строительстве и производстве. Вопросы перевода научно-технической литературы почти не изучены. Это в первую очередь обусловлено тем, что специалист в определенной области науки или техники усвоив

несколько грамматических правил, способен понять, о чём идет речь в статье по его узкой специальности, а с годами может довольно бегло читать свою литературу. И связи с этим широко распространено мнение, что в процессе преподавания языка работа над научно-техническими текстами не вызывает затруднения у специалистов.

Однако при этом забывают, что специалисты нередко допускают грубое искажение смысла оригинала и что они обычно беспомощны, когда сталкиваются со статьями по смежным специальностям.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	ПИИЦ (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

### Materials and Methods

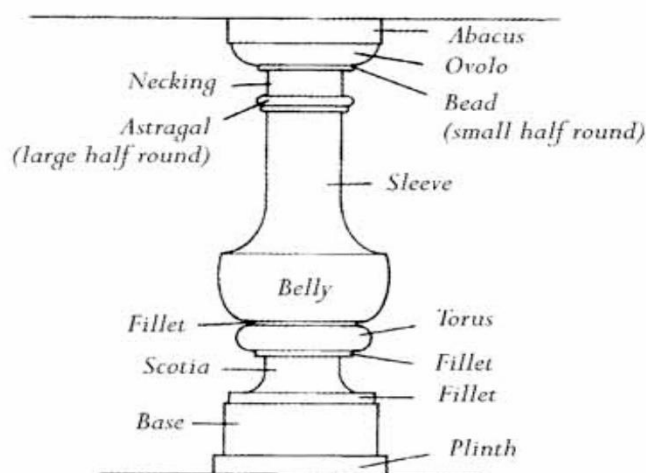
При переводе с английского языка на русский специалисты-инженеры, строители сталкиваются с проблемой недостаточного количества специализированных терминологических словарей. Знание основных категорий, понятий и терминов обусловлено прежде всего необходимостью правильной ориентации в сложном массиве языка построения. Важно понимать, что точное значение терминов, необходимых для правильного понимания внешней информации.

Адекватность перевода строительных и архитектурных слов не гарантируется соблюдением формальной точности, буквальным копированием переведенного текста. Напротив, она переводится отказом от повторения первоначальных форм[1].

Лексические преобразования, то есть "отклонение от словарных соответствий" в

переводе строительных терминов, обусловлены различиями в емкости слов и терминов, которые лишь частично совпадают по смыслу.

В лексических системах английского и узбекского языков наблюдается расхождение, которое проявляется в типе семантической структуры слова и семантическом объеме слова. В значении этого слова в разных языках часто встречаются разные признаки одного и того же явления или понятия, которое отражает видение мира, своеобразный язык, а точнее язык, что неизбежно создает трудности в переводе. Слово *surveying* имеет несколько значений «съёмка, осмотр». В зависимости от контекста получаем следующий перевод: *surveying unit* - топографическая часть (военная), *forests surveying* - лесоустройство, *land-surveying* - геодезическая съёмка, *plane-surveying* - землемерная съёмка.



К примеру, если рассмотреть слово *abaculus*, оно сократилось как слово *abacus* при переводе в древние времена рассматривалась как плоская плитка, орнамент или мозаичная плитка, но со временем этому термину обращались как «капитель колонны», что означало верхнюю часть колонны. (см.рис.1). А также слово *abacus* которое переводилось как мозаичная плитка, заменили термины, которые означают плиту “tile”, “sheet”, “panel” [2].

В процессе перевода строительных текстов возникает также проблема которая сталкивает переводчика с некоторыми трудностями, связанными с различными значениями. Термин “builder”, “constructor” достаточно часто встречается в текстах строительной тематики. Значение первого слова «строитель», а второго «конструктор» но в современных словарях и учебниках эти два термина переводятся в одном значении. К примеру “builder” is a person who builds and constructs things. “Constructor” is a person who constructs things. Но при переводе с русского

на английский язык приводится как слово означающее строитель, а не конструктор.

При переводе слова «cartography» возникает ряд трудностей связанных с тем, что на первый взгляд это слово напоминает географический термин «картография», создание географической карты. Но с 19 века это слово началось переводиться как «картография» строительный термин, при котором создается и рисуется карта, изучая территорию и расположение земли до строительства. Этот термин часто используется в направлениях геодезии. С 20 века оно рассматривается как иллюстративная дискуссия темы.

Если рассмотреть данное предложение, которое приведено в учебнике геодезии «*By compacting loose sandy ground in advance, suppress the decrease of volume and the increase of pore water pressure during the earthquake*». При переводе оно означает «Заранее уплотняя рыхлый песчаный грунт, подбавьте уменьшение объема и повышение порового давления воды во время

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	ПИИЦ (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

землетрясения». Слово сочетание **loose sandy** не возможно перевести дословно. Слово *loose* означает терять или потеря, для того чтобы перевести это словосочетание, надо обратить внимание на предложение, поскольку специалист который не знает терминов строительной сферы, может ошибиться и допустить грубую ошибку при переводе следующих предложений. Перевод несложных терминов-фраз представляет особую трудность, так как они состоят из цепочки слов, не связанных между собой служебными словами и другими словами. Как правило, основное слово терминологической фразы находится в конце, а перевод термина осуществляется с последнего слова на первое с добавлением отсутствующих смысловых компонентов и окончаний [3. pp.181-197]. Следует учитывать, что порядок слов в русских эквивалентах терминов-фраз часто отличается от порядка слов в английском языке.

Лингвисты, занимающиеся особенностями переводов в области строительства или других, выделяют несколько способов перевода терминов в строительстве архитектуры. Среди них следующие:

1. Когда термины на разных языках совпадают, такие совпадения переводятся с одного языка на другой путем подстановки.

2. Термины можно классифицировать на разных языках по-разному, поэтому в данном случае в переводе используется метод аналогии.

3. Термины, которые являются международными словами, переводятся путем расчета.

4. В случае, если в иностранном языке не установлен термин для обозначения нового понятия, используйте метод описания.

Solidify pore water by replacing it with cement milk. Данное предложение переводится как «Отвердеть поровую воду, заменив ее цементным молоком». Но это очень не корректный перевод, поскольку оно переводится как «Делать твердым землю заменив её цементным раствором» [4. pp. 9-26].

При переводе некоторых слов которые произошли с латинского и греческого языка, несмотря на то что у них сходное написание при переводе они отличаются. Например:

1. Actual - в английском языке означает «фактический», а не «актуальный».

It's interesting to illustrate, at this point, how Flory's equation can lead to serious discrepancies if applied without due regard to the **actual** concentration of materials. На данном этапе интересно проиллюстрировать, как оригинальное уравнение флоры может привести к серьезным отклонениям при применении без учета фактической концентрации реагентов.

The relationship is responsible for the original shifting of this band. Это взаимоотношение

обуславливает **первоначальный** сдвиг этой полосы.

3. Progressive - большей частью означает «постепенный», а не «прогрессивный».

A progressive increase in the change of volume was noticed at all existence. При всех растяжениях было отмечено постепенное возрастание изменения объема.

Глагол *appear* имеет два значения: «появляться» и «казаться». Во втором случае он выступает как глагол характеристика. Однако очень часто этот глагол переводится как «оказывается», хотя в словаре такое значение и не приводится. Так например, предложение «This synthesis appear to offer the best results» как правило переводят: Получается, что синтез даст наилучшие результаты. Такой перевод грубо искажает смысл предложения, так как предложение дается за свершившийся факт. Необходимо помнить, что в функции глагола-характеристики переводится словом «кажется» и поэтому приведенное выше предложение означает: «кажется, что этот синтез даст наилучшие результаты».

Следующий глагол "to attempt" имеет несколько значений, которые известны как - "попытаться", "попробовать" - обычно применяется, когда этот глагол с последующим инфинитивом.

Мы присутствовали при проведении этого расследования. Мы пытались провести исследование. Однако, если за глаголом следует существительное, рекомендуется перевести его значение "брать". We attempted to carry out this investigation. Мы попытались провести исследование. Однако, если после глагола стоит существительное, то рекомендуется переводить его значение «предпринимать». We attempted this investigation. «Мы предприняли это исследование» [5. С.34].

To be available - хорошо известны два значения этого сочетания-«доступный» и «имеющийся в распоряжении». Нередко эти значения, особенно в отрицательном предложении, не дают точного представления о сути предложения. Например, из перевода предложения: "The starting compounds were not available". как "Первоначальные связи были недоступны", считают, что эти связи были слишком дорогими, и из перевода предложения This information was not available как «Эти сведения были недоступны», делают вывод, что сведения были засекречены. Однако обычно это слово означает отсутствие чего-либо по чисто техническим и физическим причинам. В таких случаях to be available рекомендуется переводить как «имеется», а not to be available - «не имеется», «отсутствовать».

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	ПИИЦ (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

### Conclusion

Практическая значимость исследования состоит в возможности использования полученных результатов для преподавания английского языка в не языковом вузе при

подготовке специалистов в области строительства и архитектуры, при подготовке переводчиков в сфере профессиональной коммуникации по указанной специальности.

### References:

1. Prokhorova, V. N. (1996). *Russkaya terminologiya*. Moscow, Rossiya.
2. Shelov, S. D. (1984). *Terminologiya, professional'naya leksika i professionalizma*. Moscow, Rossiya.
3. Tercedor, M. (2011). The cognitive dynamics of terminological variation. *Terminology*, 17 (2), pp.181-197.
4. Vendrell, R. M., & Dominguez, F. J. (2012). Emergent neologisms and lexical gaps in specialized languages. *Terminology*, 18 (1), pp. 9-26.
5. Vinogradov, V. V. (1972). *Korni slavyanskoy terminologii*. (p.34). Moskva, Rossiya.
6. Farkhodzhonova, N. F. (2016). Vliyaniye ideologicheskikh protsessov na natsional'nyuy ideyu v usloviyakh globalizatsii. *Mir nauki i obrazovaniya*, № 2 (6).
7. Bim, I. L. (1977). *Methods of teaching foreign languages as a science and problems of a school textbook*. (p.202). Moscow.
8. Kitaygorodskaya, G. A. (1992). *Intensive training in foreign languages: theory and practice*. (p.254). Moscow.
9. Velikanova, A. V. (2007). *Competence-based approach to education / issue 2*. (p.92). Samara: Profi.
10. Polat, E. S. (2000). Method of projects at foreign language lessons. *Foreign languages at school*, №2, pp.3-10.
11. Tsaturova, I. A. (2004). *Computer technologies in teaching foreign languages/ textbook for universities*. (p.200). Moscow: High school.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

SOI: [1.1/TAS](#) DOI: [10.15863/TAS](#)

## International Scientific Journal Theoretical & Applied Science

p-ISSN: 2308-4944 (print) e-ISSN: 2409-0085 (online)

Year: 2019 Issue: 04 Volume: 72

Published: 30.04.2019 <http://T-Science.org>

QR – Issue



QR – Article



I. R. Shakirov

PhD researcher,

National University of Uzbekistan,  
Tashkent, Republic of Uzbekistan

[piterpenk@mail.ru](mailto:piterpenk@mail.ru)

## HISTORY AND PROSPECTS OF COOPERATION BETWEEN UZBEKISTAN AND SINGAPORE

**Abstract:** In the article are researched historical processes of cooperation between two countries: Uzbekistan and Singapore. Based on primary source author defined the stage's development of two-sided interrelationship. At the end of article, based on researched, which were made by author, are given conclusions.

**Key words:** Uzbekistan, Singapore, State visit, cooperation, diplomacy, delegation, stages.

**Language:** English

**Citation:** Shakirov, I. R. (2019). History and prospects of cooperation between Uzbekistan and Singapore. *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 04 (72), 565-569.

**Soi:** <http://s-o-i.org/1.1/TAS-04-72-78> **Doi:**  <https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2019.04.72.78>

### Introduction

For each state that has embarked on its own path of development, one of the most important tasks is to establish friendly diplomatic relations with one or another state. Having embarked on a sovereign path of development, the Republic of Uzbekistan, from the first days of independence, began to create its own foreign policy concept, which subsequently played an important role in establishing communication with the outside world.

Thus, according to official sources, the main principles of Uzbekistan's foreign policy are:

- openness to cooperation regardless of ideology, commitment to universal values, preservation of peace and security;
- respect for the sovereignty of other States and recognition of the inviolability of borders;
- non-interference in the internal Affairs of other States;
- peaceful settlement of disputes;
- non-use of force or threat of force;
- respect for human rights and freedoms;
- the advantage of generally recognized norms of international law over domestic laws and legal norms;
- conclusion of unions, joining and leaving the Commonwealth in order to ensure the highest interests of the state, the people, its welfare and security;
- non-alignment to aggressive military blocs and unions;
- equality and mutual interest in inter-state relations, supremacy of national interests of the state;

• development of external relations on the basis of bilateral and multilateral agreements: in case of rapprochement with one state not to move away from another [1].

Since 1991, many developed countries have officially begun to recognize the state independence of the Republic of Uzbekistan. In a relatively short period of time, Uzbekistan's sovereignty has been recognized in more than 165 countries. The recognition of state sovereignty, in our view, is the first step towards the establishment of diplomatic relations. The Republic of Singapore officially recognized the independence of the Republic of Uzbekistan in April 1992.

### Methods and materials

In the study of the issue the author used the methods of historicism, comparative analysis, as well as the principles of objectivity. It is important to emphasize that at the present time, in the post-Soviet space, works on the issues of bilateral relations between Singapore and Uzbekistan practically do not exist. The author of the article mainly used data from the official websites of public institutions.

1992 is a historic date for the Republic of Uzbekistan, as from that moment the country began to actively establish diplomatic relations with countries such as Russia, Turkey, the United States, including the countries of Asia and South-East Asia.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

In particular, it should be noted that on April 8, 1997, diplomatic relations were established between Uzbekistan and Singapore.

Currently, Singapore is one of the priorities in the foreign policy of many countries.

The main principles of Singapore's foreign policy, as the Minister of Foreign Affairs noted in his report on July 17, 2017, are:

- having a dynamic and successful economy, a stable political system and a unified society;
- not to be dependent, a vassal state, the presence of a modern armed army that can protect the country and ensure its status as an independent and non-vassal state;
- development of broad relations based on mutual respect for the sovereignty of each other and the equality of national States regardless of their size;
- promoting and promoting a global order governed by the rule of law, international law and the peaceful settlement of disputes;
- work honestly and openly with all parties[2].

After the establishment of diplomatic relations between Uzbekistan and Singapore, the parties began to develop bilateral relations.

It should be noted that one of the first documents of intergovernmental status adopted by Uzbekistan in order to strengthen relations was the Agreement on the promotion and protection of investment, which was signed in 2003 [3]. This agreement, in our opinion, was an important step in strengthening relations, as well as in attracting investment in the Republic of Uzbekistan.

Based on our analysis, it should be emphasized that the period from 1997 to 2007 is a period of calm. In this decade, which can be described as a period of creating conditions for the further development of bilateral relations, no effective measures have been taken between the two States to develop bilateral relations. Since 2007, the development of relations between the two States has moved to a new stage.

In this way, 2007 is a turning point in the history of relations between the two States. In 2007, the first official visit of the first President of Uzbekistan Islam Karimov took place, which marked the beginning of a new stage of diplomatic relations between the two countries.

During the visit of the first President, issues of bilateral relations, regional and international problems were comprehensively discussed. The parties agreed to develop relations on the basis of mutual respect for sovereignty and territorial integrity, non-interference in each other's internal Affairs. As noted in the Joint statement adopted following the talks, the views of Uzbekistan and Singapore are similar in the fight against international terrorism, drug trafficking and transnational organized crime [4].

During the official visit of the first President Islam Karimov to Singapore, agreements were signed,

which contributed to the strengthening of relations between the two countries.

In particular, one of them is the agreement on the main directions of economic and humanitarian cooperation adopted in 2007 [3].

The visit of the first President to Singapore was positive. Thus, in the course of negotiations to stimulate partnerships of business people, it was agreed to start a consultative process on the conclusion of an agreement on the avoidance of double taxation [5].

It is important to emphasize that since the establishment of diplomatic relations (1997), there have been no representatives on the ground from the diplomatic sides, which in our opinion are key figures in the development of bilateral relations. To solve this problem, on the initiative of the First President of Uzbekistan, it was decided to open the Embassy of Uzbekistan in Singapore. Thus, it can be stated that the opening of the diplomatic mission of Uzbekistan in Singapore is one of the most important steps in strengthening friendly relations.

It is relevant to note that this decision was noted positively by the Singapore side. In particular, the Prime Minister of the city-state Li Xian Long noted that the opening of the Embassy is an important step towards the development of bilateral relations [4].

In that way, since 2007, the Embassy of the Republic of Uzbekistan has been operating in Singapore, which in turn, in combination, oversees cooperation with Australia.

Essentially must be emphasized that the residence of the Embassy of Singapore in Uzbekistan is currently located in the territory of the Republic of Singapore. Since 2011, the Ambassador of Singapore to Uzbekistan is Zulkifli bin Baharudin, and since 2018, the Ambassador extraordinary and Plenipotentiary of our country to Singapore is Kahramon Shakirov.

One of the most important results of the state visit of the first President of Uzbekistan to Singapore, in our opinion, is the opening of the Singapore Institute of management Development in Tashkent, which is an important step in the humanitarian development of the two countries.

Thus, in 2008 in Tashkent, according to the Decree of the President of the Republic of Uzbekistan dated September 5, 2007, №. PP-691 [6], was opened a branch of the Singapore Institute of management Development (CIMR).

It should be noted that the main goal of CIMR is to create professional development opportunities for Uzbek citizens, which is provided in cooperation with recognized universities of the United Kingdom; academic programs in the fields of entrepreneurship and management, business and marketing, banking and Finance, information technology in business, international hotel business management [7].

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

In 2009, the relationship between Uzbekistan and Singapore reached a new level. From that moment until today, regular visits are carried out at the state level.

In such way, on April 6, 2009, the delegation of Singapore headed by the Speaker of Parliament visited Uzbekistan.

Over the visit to Uzbekistan, the delegation of Singapore met with the Speaker of the Legislative chamber of the Oliy Majlis of the Republic of Uzbekistan, during which it was emphasized that the agreements reached by the heads of the two States are an important legal basis for the development of bilateral cooperation between Uzbekistan and Singapore in all spheres, including in the field of inter-parliamentary relations. The speaker of the Parliament of the Republic of Singapore also held talks with the Chairman of the Senate of the Oliy Majlis of the Republic of Uzbekistan. During the conversation, it was noted that inter-parliamentary cooperation plays an important role in strengthening the legal framework of bilateral relations. The parties discussed the issues of further intensification of relations in this direction [8].

Since 2010, active inter-Ministerial political consultations between the Ministries of Foreign Affairs of the two States have been initiated.

Thus, in December 2010, the first round of political consultations was held in Singapore, where important spheres of political events taking place both in the territory of Uzbekistan and Singapore were touched upon.

On April 3, 2012, the 2nd round of consultations between the foreign ministries of Uzbekistan and Singapore was held in Tashkent with the participation of former foreign Minister M. Zulkifli [9]. Within the framework of political consultations, an Agreement was signed between the Republics of Uzbekistan and Singapore on mutual exemption from visa requirements for holders of diplomatic passports, Memorandums of understanding between the Academy of state and public construction under the President of the Republic of Uzbekistan and The College of public service of Singapore, as well as between the Environmental movement of Uzbekistan and the environmental Council of Singapore for cooperation in the field of environmental protection [9]. In our view, the main purpose of the inter-Ministerial political consultations is to discuss, as well as the possibility of providing solutions to the most important problems in the public life of Singapore and Uzbekistan.

Accordingly, it can be argued that the development of diplomatic relations between the two countries created favorable conditions for the strengthening and further development of bilateral relations, both in political and socio-economic aspects.

In particular, in September 2011 between the corporations "Idorama" (Singapore) and "Kokand textile mill" (Uzbekistan) was implemented a project of 40 million us dollars, in which it was planned to process 10 thousand tons of cotton fiber and production of 7.2 thousand tons of compact yarn per year. At the end of 2012 under the agreement, which was signed with the government of the Republic of Uzbekistan [10], "Idorama" additionally invested \$ 31 million in the textile production of "Kokand textile plant" to increase processing capacity to 20 thousand cotton fibers per year. As a result, the company's investments in this production reached 75 million us dollars. Thus, the Corporation "Idorame" owns 76 % of the shares of the JV (Joint venture), the National Bank of the Republic of Uzbekistan foreign trade (foreign Economic activity) – 24 %.

On October 24-27, 2013, a Singapore delegation headed by the second Minister of foreign Affairs and the second Minister of environment and water resources of Singapore visited Uzbekistan. During the visit, a meeting was held with the Deputy Prime Minister, the Chairman of the women's Committee of the Republic of Uzbekistan, the leadership of the Ministry of foreign Affairs, and a lecture was held for students of the University of World Economy and Diplomacy.

Within the meeting, the two sides discussed the state and prospects of Uzbek-Singapore relations in various fields, as well as proposals for the institutionalization of relations. It is important to emphasize that the two sides exchanged views on certain international and regional issues. The meeting noted with satisfaction the constructive nature of cooperation between the two countries within the UN and other leading international political and financial institutions. The parties paid special attention to promising areas of trade and economic cooperation. Currently, there are 32 enterprises in Uzbekistan with the participation of Singapore capital, working in such industries as light industry, energy, electronics, food [11].

The result of the diplomatic negotiations was the confirmation of mutual interest in the further development of bilateral trade, investment cooperation and implementation of joint projects with the use of advanced technologies. In addition, it was emphasized that Uzbekistan and Singapore attach great importance to the further development of cooperation in the cultural and humanitarian sphere, including through the establishment of working relations between educational institutions and scientific institutions.

In consequence of our small research we can state that since 1997 - 2013, the relations between Uzbekistan and Singapore can be divided into two stages:



## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

1. From 1997 to 2007, this can be characterized as a period of slow development of relations between Singapore and Uzbekistan;

2. From 2007 to 2013, the period of development, this can be called as a stage of mutually beneficial cooperation for the two countries.

Starting from 2017, in our opinion, a new stage of cooperation has begun. 2017 is the anniversary date of the relationship. In this regard, the President of the Republic of Uzbekistan Shavkat Mirziyoyev noted that over the past period, significant results have been achieved in establishing long-term and multifaceted cooperation – political dialogue is developing, including within the framework of international organizations, trade, economic and investment, cultural and humanitarian ties [12].

Since 2017, the Embassy of the Republic of Uzbekistan in Singapore has been actively promoting the attraction of tourists from Singapore.

In particular, on May 27, 2017 in one of the largest shopping and entertainment complexes of Singapore, Our Tampines Hub, the Embassy of the Republic of Uzbekistan organized a national stand, which was widely presented products of folk art and applied art. In addition, information and photo materials, brochures with an overview of the development of the tourism industry in Uzbekistan, as well as videos on the historical monuments of Samarkand, Bukhara, Khiva, Termez and Tashkent were also prepared [13].

It is important to emphasize that Singapore is interested in the development of the tourism industry with Uzbekistan. Thus, in one of the largest shopping centers of Singapore TanglinMall called "Uzbekistan – the pearl of the silk road" was held an exhibition-presentation dedicated to the tourism potential of Uzbekistan. It is organized by the diplomatic mission of our country in Singapore together with the travel company «Aveson Travel».

The opening ceremony was attended by representatives of the National Airline "Uzbekistan Airways", travel company "Uzbekistan Holidays", and guests of the event were representatives of the diplomatic corps accredited in Singapore, major international organizations and financial institutions. During the presentation, the audience was provided with information about the development of the tourism industry in Uzbekistan, an overview of the

current state of tourism infrastructure, photos and videos, clearly demonstrating the beauty and uniqueness of historical and architectural monuments of Uzbekistan [14].

A significant step in the development of the tourism industry of the two countries is the opening of the Uzbek-Singapore Center for tourism development, the ceremony of which was held on February 28, 2019. The opening ceremony was attended by Ambassador of Singapore to Uzbekistan Zulkifli Baharudin, representatives of the Ministry of foreign Affairs, Ministry of trade and industry, Committee on foreign trade, National University of Singapore, National Association of travel agencies, representatives of scientific, academic and business circles of the country.

It should be highlighted that the opening of this Center is of a state nature, which we can see by the presence of many state institutions.

Also, in his statement, Ambassador 3. Baharudin emphasized that Uzbekistan has a significant tourist potential and is under-studied market for both tourists and businessmen of Singapore. According to him, the establishment of this tourism Center will provide additional opportunities to obtain objective and complete information about the development of tourism in Uzbekistan [15].

Likewise, it can be argued that since 2017 Singapore has been developing relations with Uzbekistan in the tourism industry. In addition, it should be emphasized that according to statistics, the number of tourists from Singapore began to increase in 2018. Thus, in 2017, Uzbekistan was visited by 6 tourists, and in 2018 – 1502 [16].

## Conclusion

So way, it is safe to say that since the establishment of diplomatic relations between Uzbekistan and Singapore, all opportunities in the development of bilateral relations have been realized. But the 10-year period from 1997-2007 is very quiet, because, in our opinion, the parties have not taken measures to develop relations.

After analyzing the available sources, we identified several historical stages in the diplomatic relations between Uzbekistan and Singapore, where each period was characterized objectively.

## References:

1. (n.d.). *Osnovnie principy vneshney politiki Uzbekistana*. Retrieved March 28, 2019, from <http://testhistory.ru/history>
2. (n.d.). *Five core principles of Singapore's foreign policy*. Retrieved April 10, 2019, from <https://www.straitstimes.com/singapore/five-core-principles-of-singapores-foreign-policy>

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

- (n.d.). *Soglasheniye mejdru pravitelstvom Respubliki Uzbekistan i pravitelstvom Respubliki Singapur*. Retrieved March 26, 2019, from <http://lex.uz/docs/2083696>
- (2007, Jan. 27). *Narodnoye slovo*. Noviye gorizonti sotrudnichestva.
- (n.d.). *Soglasheniye mejdru pravitelstvom Respubliki Uzbekistan i pravitelstvom Respubliki Singapur ob izbejanii dvoynogo nalogooblajeniya I predotvrashenii ukloneniya ot uplati nalogov na dohod*. Retrieved March 27, 2019, from <https://nrm.uz/contentf doc=460274>
- (n.d.). *Ob Organizacii deyatelnosti Singapurskogo Instituta Razvitiya Menedjmenta v g. Tashkente*. Retrieved April 03, 2019, from <http://lex.uz/docs/1244065>
- (n.d.). *MDIS v Tashkente*. Retrieved April 03, 2019, from <http://mdis.uz/>
- (n.d.). *Singapurskaya delegaciya provela v Tashkente ryad peregovorov*. Retrieved April 04, 2019, from <https://uzreport.news/world/singapurskaya-delegatsiya-provela-v-tashkente-ryad-peregovorov>
- (n.d.). *Tashkent I Singapur podpisali ryad dokumentov po dvustoronnemu sotrudnichestvu*. Retrieved April 10, 2019, from <https://www.podrobno.uz/cat/politic/tashkent-i-singapur-podpisali-ryad-soglasheni/>
- (n.d.). «Indorama Group» gotov investirovat v tekstilnuyu promishlennost Uzbekistana. Retrieved April 12, 2019, from <https://www.uzdaily.uz/ru/post/749>
- (n.d.). *Informacionniy daydjest. № 208*. Retrieved April 11, 2019, from [http://www.uzbinbkk.com/show\\_content\\_detail.php?id=2343](http://www.uzbinbkk.com/show_content_detail.php?id=2343)
- (n.d.). *Singapur I Uzbekistan – 20 let plodotvornogo sotrudnichestva*. Retrieved April 14, 2019, from <https://kun.uz/ru/news/2017/04/22/singapur-i-uzbekistan-20-let-plodotvornogo-sotrudnichestva>
- (n.d.). *Prezentaciya turisticheskogo potenciala Uzbekistana v Singapure*. Retrieved April 16, 2019, from <http://jahonnews.uz/ru/turizm/121/34883/>
- (n.d.). «Uzbekistan – Jemchujina Shelkovogo Puti». Retrieved April 18, 2019, from <http://jahonnews.uz/ru/turizm/121/33743/>
- (n.d.). *V Singapure proshla ceremoniya otkritiya Uzbeksko-singapurskogo Centra po razvitiyu turizma*. Retrieved April 18, 2019, from <https://uzbektourism.uz/ru/newnews/view?id=138>
- (n.d.). *Raspredeleniye po stranam chisla inostrannih lic, vevavshih v Respubliku Uzbekistan v 2017-2018 gg*. Retrieved April 15, 2019, from <https://stat.uz/ru/266-ofytsyalnaia-statystyka-ru/sotsyalnaia-sfera-ru/turyzm-ru/5385>

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHII (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

SOI: [1.1/TAS](#) DOI: [10.15863/TAS](#)

## International Scientific Journal Theoretical & Applied Science

p-ISSN: 2308-4944 (print) e-ISSN: 2409-0085 (online)

Year: 2019 Issue: 04 Volume: 72

Published: 30.04.2019 <http://T-Science.org>

QR – Issue



QR – Article



**SECTION 31. Economic research, finance, innovation, risk management.**

**A.A. Hasanov**  
Doctor of Philosophy (Ph.D) on Economy,  
Associated Professor,  
Azerbaijan State Agrarian University,  
Head of the Department of Management and  
Agricultural Marketing  
[asif.hasanov@rambler.ru](mailto:asif.hasanov@rambler.ru)  
ORCID ID 0000-0001-8762-572

## INVESTMENT IN "GREEN" ECONOMY - A STRATEGIC WAY OF ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF AZERBAIJAN

**Abstract:** This article is devoted to the topical issue - investment into the key sectors of the "green" economy. Green economy can be defined as a strategically designed network to use valuable natural resources and environment protection, providing of broad range of services and products, using "green" technologies, improving the living conditions and prosperity of humans by means of creation of a energy saving accommodation and enhancing work environment. The article deals with the current "green" economy directions and perspectives of its development. The necessary measures are being taken in the Republic of Azerbaijan in order to neutralize the negative environmental impact of the fuel-energy complex. As Azerbaijan is a sunny country, a particular interest has been increased to solar energy as well as geo-thermal wind bioenergy. The author of the article proposes how to percept green economy as development for the production and consumption of goods and services that sustain ecological safety and need serious investments into the "green" development.

**Key words:** investments, Green economy, renewable energy.

**Language:** Russian

**Citation:** Hasanov, A. A. (2019). Investment in "green" economy - a strategic way of economic development in the republic of Azerbaijan. *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 04 (72), 570-575.

**Soi:** <http://s-o-i.org/1.1/TAS-04-72-79> **Doi:**  <https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2019.04.72.79>

### ИНВЕСТИРОВАНИЕ В ЗЕЛЁНУЮ ИНФРАСТРУКТУРУ – ПУТЬ СТРАТЕГИЧЕСКОГО РАЗВИТИЯ ЭКОНОМИКИ АЗЕРБАЙДЖАНСКОЙ РЕСПУБЛИКИ

**Аннотация:** Статья посвящена актуальной проблеме – инвестированию в ключевые сектора «зелёной» экономики. Зелёная экономика может быть определена как стратегически спланированная сеть по использованию ценных природных ресурсов и охране окружающей среды, обеспечению широкого спектра услуг и продуктов, использованию «зелёных» технологий, по улучшению условий жизни и благосостояния людей путём создания энергосберегающего жилья и расширения рабочей среды. В статье рассматриваются действующие направления «зелёной» экономики и перспективы её развития. В Азербайджанской Республике принимаются необходимые меры для нейтрализации негативного воздействия топливно-энергетического комплекса на окружающую среду. Повышен интерес к использованию солнечной энергии, так как Азербайджан – солнечная страна, а также к геотермальной, биоэнергетике энергии ветра. Автор даёт предложения к восприятию зелёной экономики как развитию производства и потребления товаров и услуг, которые обеспечивают экологическую безопасность и требующие серьёзные инвестиции в «зелёное» развитие.

**Ключевые слова:** инвестиции, «зелёная» экономика, возобновляемая энергия.

#### Введение

Азербайджан – страна с высоким потенциалом возобновляемых источников энергии. Экономически жизнеспособные и

технически возможные возобновляемые источники энергии в стране в потенциале оцениваются в 26940 МВт, в том числе 3000 МВт ветровой энергии, 23040 МВт солнечной энергии,

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	РИИЦ (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

380 МВт биоэнергетики и 520 МВт горных реках. Потенциальная мощность гидроэнергетики оценивается экспертами в 40 млрд. киловатт-часов (рис.1). Несмотря на богатство энергоресурсов и признание в качестве экспортёра традиционных видов энергоносителей в мире, Азербайджан не использует в полной мере все источники энергии. Возобновляемые источники энергии в Азербайджане являются одной из ключевых целей политики энергетической безопасности страны в целях усиления их использования. Одним из основных шагов, предпринятых для эффективного использования потенциала возобновляемых источников энергии в нашей стране, стало

принятие законопроекта [1]. Начиная с 2009 года, для расширения национальной энергетической безопасности в стране принимается ряд законодательных актов. Решения, принятые для эффективного использования потенциала возобновляемой энергии нашей страны, и реализованные проекты позволили добиться успеха в увеличении производства альтернативной и возобновляемой энергии. Запуск очередного поколения возобновляемых источников энергии привёл к новому этапу развития в энергетическом секторе и экономики в целом.



**Рис.1 Прогнозируемый энергетический потенциал Азербайджанской Республики**

Составлено автором с использованием данных источника: [Электронный ресурс] <http://www.biznesinfo.az/observer/dossier/params/ln/ru/article/94442> (дата обращения 20.03.2019)

### Теория

На протяжении более трёх десятилетий многие страны заняты реструктуризацией экономики, нацелены постепенно изменить её цвет (коричневый на зелёный). Изучая тенденции прошлого и настоящего опыта стран мира, практически использующих международный документ «Забота о Земле – стратегия устойчивого существования», отражающий всемирную стратегию охраны природы, провозгласившую несколько принципов устойчивого развития, один из которых создание национальных программ, обеспечивающих адекватное состояние экономической, экологической и социальной сфер [2].

Термин «зелёная экономика» Программы Организации Объединённых Наций по

окружающей среде (ЮНЕП) определяется как экономика, которая способствует благосостоянию людей и социальной справедливости и в то же время снижает экологические риски.

Согласно расчётам различных экологических агентств развитых стран, спрос на природные ресурсы в 1961 году составлял 70% от потенциала биологического восстановления Земли, спрос в 1980 – е годы превысил мощности Земли, а природные ресурсы, использованные к концу двадцатого века, уже составили 120% восстановительной способности Земли, то есть для восстановления израсходованных ресурсов требуется 1,2 всех не возобновляемых ресурсов Земли [3].

В связи с этим в развитых странах была введена концепция «зелёных» технологий, для

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	РИИЦ (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

того, чтобы использовать больше природных ресурсов, а также для защиты окружающей среды. «Зелёные» технологии – это технологии, которые используются природой и являются абсолютно безвредными или наносят минимальный ущерб окружающей среде. Эта концепция включает продукты, оборудование и системы, которые отвечают следующим критериям: минимизация деградации окружающей среды; снижение выбросов парниковых газов; содействие использованию возобновляемых источников энергии [4].

Зелёная экономика также может быть описана как новая концепция экономики или может быть определена как существенное дополнение человеческих и природных факторов к основам классической экономики.

Инвестирование в зелёную инфраструктуру имеет экономический смысл – одна и та же земельная площадь может обеспечить несколько выгод: предоставление нашему обществу целого ряда ценных, экономически важных товаров и услуг и здоровую экосистему, динамику которой определяет разнообразие в ней живых организмов. Утрата биоразнообразия принесёт скудные выгоды обществу в целом. Однако, если применять инвестиционные решения для улучшения зелёной инфраструктуры, то возможно, не только сохранить экосистему здоровой, но и реабилитировать деградировавшие места обитания, чтобы предоставить обществу качественные товары и услуги [5].

### Данные и методы

Необходимость перехода к «зелёной» экономике во всех сферах жизни общества продиктована тем, что в результате экономического развития технологические инновации нуждаются в энергии и, с другой стороны, также наблюдается рост бытовых и промышленных отходов и сточных вод. Основными приоритетами являются управление этими областями, защита окружающей среды, благополучие людей в здоровой окружающей среде, использование природных ресурсов на благо населения мира.

Характеристикой насыщения количеством благ является валовой внутренний продукт на душу населения по паритету покупательной способности. В целом же, этот «показатель роста экономики» в прямом смысле отрицательно влияет на окружающую среду. К счастью, в последние десятилетия многие страны пересматривают так хорошо действующие и отлаженные временем пути развития экономики своих стран в пользу «зелёной экономики». И Азербайджан, как динамично развивающаяся в настоящее время страна, присоединился к этому течению, желая коренным образом изменить

инфраструктуру экономики. В этом векторном направлении нашей Республики, обладающей одними возможностями и не имеющей других, по мнению автора статьи, надо двигаться. Новая модель экономического развития должна катализировать инвестиции и инновации и открыть новые возможности для создания экологически чистых продуктов.

Целью исследования является инвестирование в зелёные предприятия. Чтобы бизнес был зелёным, он должен соответствовать следующим принципам:

- 1) устойчивого развития, которое должно отразиться в бизнес-решениях;
- 2) производства экологически чистых продуктов, оказания услуг;
- 3) приверженности экологическим принципам в коммерческой деятельности.

Методами исследования, которыми пользовался автор статьи – анализ и обобщение специальной литературы, публикаций в периодических изданиях, посвящённых зелёному росту, зелёной экономике, ресурсосбережению, зелёной логистики: складированию, транспортировке, упаковке, зелёной инфраструктуре [6].

### Полученные результаты

В настоящее время общая мощность производства электроэнергии в нашей стране составляет 7144 МВт, электростанции с возобновляемыми источниками энергии, включая крупные гидроэлектростанции, - 1273 МВт, что составляет 18% от общей мощности. Имеются 21 гидроэлектростанция (11 малых гидроэлектростанций) общей мощностью 1134 МВт, введена в действие установка сжигания твёрдых бытовых отходов мощностью 37 МВт, 4 ветряные электростанции общей мощностью 66 МВт, 7 солнечных электростанций общей мощностью 34 МВт, работает 1 гибридная электростанция в Гобустане. Эти станции играют важную роль в электроснабжении населения и в обеспечении энергетической безопасности страны (рис.2). В то же время природный газ и другие не возобновляемые ресурсы, используемые для производства электроэнергии, сохраняются в небольшом объёме.

Стратегический подход к обеспечению экологически чистой электроэнергией таков, что планируется до 2030 года ввести 420 МВт новых генерирующих мощностей на возобновляемых источниках энергии: при использовании энергии ветра 350 МВт, солнечной энергии 50 МВт и 20 МВт на биоэнергии (рис.3). В то же время прогнозируется высокий спрос на электроэнергию и планируется на ближайшие 10 лет увеличить долю возобновляемых источников энергии [7]. Реализация целей, изложенных в Стратегической

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	РИИЦ (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	ОАЖ (USA) = 0.350

дорожной карте, поможет увеличить это соотношение между спросом и предложением [8]. Потенциал нашей страны и меры, принимаемые

для инвестирования, являются важнейшими факторами достижения целей.

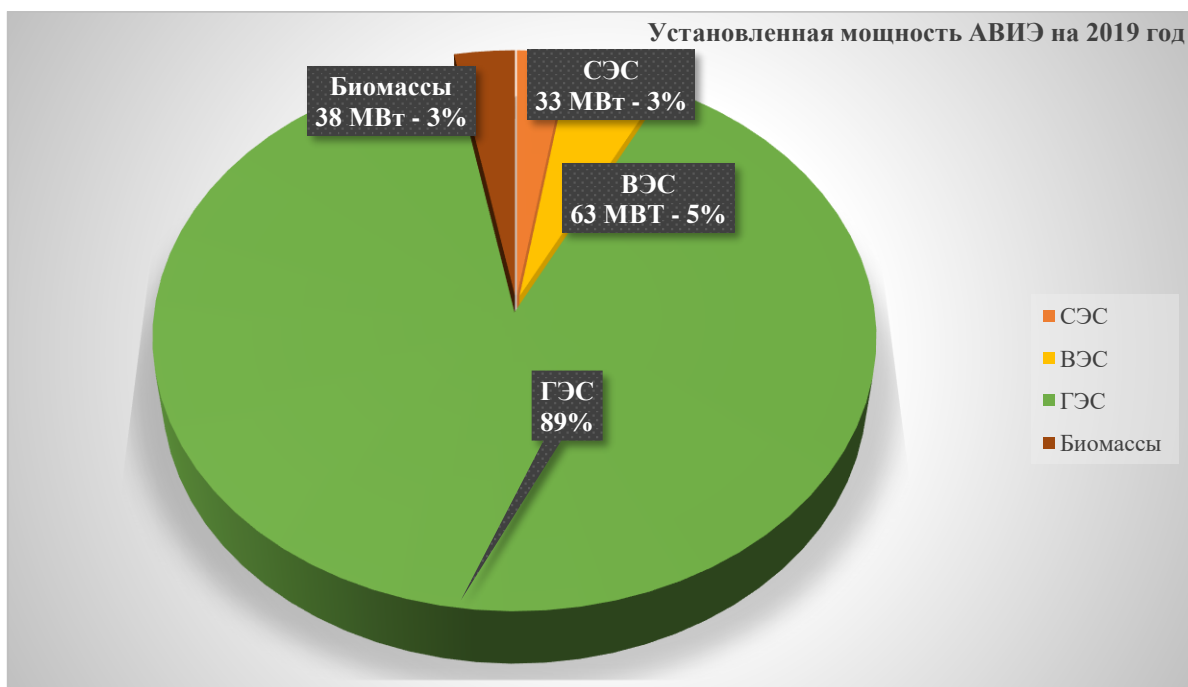


Рис 2. Электростанции АВИЭ в эксплуатации.

Составлено автором с использованием данных источника: [Электронный ресурс] <http://interfax.az/view/752076> (дата обращения 20.03.2019)

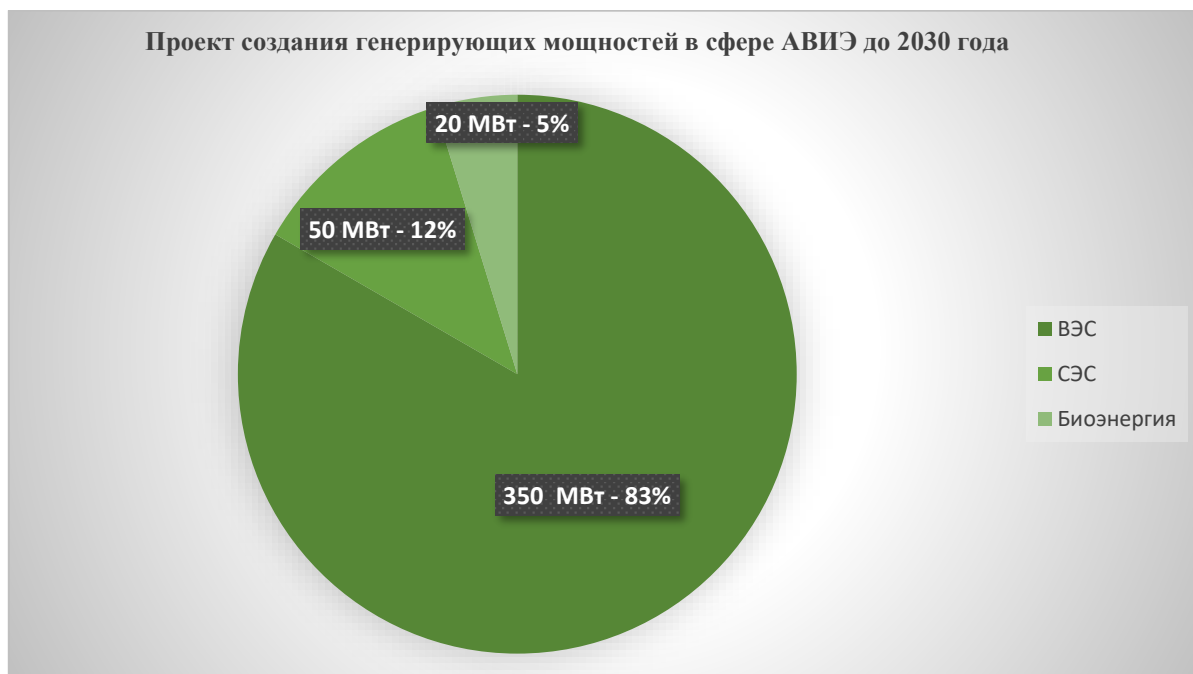


Рис 3. Электростанции по выработке энергии ветра, солнца и биомассы.

Составлено автором с использованием данных источника: [Электронный ресурс] <http://interfax.az/view/752076> (дата обращения 20.03.2019)

Азербайджан является одной из стран, применяющих налоговые льготы для поддержания использования возобновляемых

источников энергии. Так импорт оборудования, технологических средств юридическими лицами и индивидуальными предпринимателями,

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	ПИИЦ (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

получившими документ о поощрении инвестиций, в порядке, установленном соответствующим органом исполнительной власти, в течение 7 лет с даты получения документа освобождаются на 50% от таможенной пошлины и налога на добавленную стоимость. 50% заработка освобождается от налогов на имущество и земельного налога [9].

Запланированные шаги увеличили использование возобновляемых источников энергии в нашей стране, а также применение технологий в этой области. В технологическом парке города Сумгаита основан завод солнечных панелей и солнечных коллекторов с годовой производительностью 50 МВт. Помимо реализованных мероприятий, в будущем планируется реализовать множество проектов в области возобновляемых источников энергии. Проводится работа по наблюдению за измерениями для оценки потенциала этих проектов [10].

Анализ инвестиций в развитие зелёной экономики как в глобальном, так и местном масштабе показал, что сосредоточены они в основном в следующих областях:

- 1) наращивание потенциала – тренинги, консультационные услуги, техническая помощь;
- 2) финансирование услуг – гранты, финансирование проектов;
- 3) научно-исследовательские услуги – применение базовых знаний, управление наукой;
- 4) информационные услуги – обмен информацией, развитие образования;
- 5) услуги трансфера технологий – обмен технологиями.

Роль фискальной политики в развитии зелёной экономики является решающей. У каждой страны есть свои фискальные инструменты. Эти инструменты включают налоговые льготы для потребления топлива; субсидии, способствующие более чистой деятельности в областях, которые являются экологически чистыми; финансовую помощь секторам с чистыми технологиями и устойчивой производственной деятельностью, и другие инструменты.

Прежде всего, зелёная инфраструктура предлагает интеллектуальное и целостное решение для управления природным капиталом. Решение текущих проблем односторонним подходом в значительной степени игнорирует сложные взаимосвязи между основными типами землепользования, такими как поселения, сельское хозяйство, транспорт и биоразнообразие. Зелёная инфраструктура предлагает динамичные, ориентированные на будущее инвестиционные решения, позволяющие решать разнообразные и часто конкурирующие проблемы землепользования и достигающие положительные побочные эффекты. Инвестиции в зелёную инфраструктуру способствуют появлению

высококвалифицированных рабочих мест, способных восстановить и поддержать экосистему страны.

Одним из ключевых преимуществ зелёной инфраструктуры является её способность выполнять несколько функций в одной области. В отличие от большинства инфраструктур, которые имеют только одну цель, зелёная инфраструктура является многофункциональной. Зелёная инфраструктура предлагает беспроигрышные решения и выход из разных ситуаций с небольшими потерями, которые приносят пользу многим заинтересованным сторонам, а также широкой общественности. Зелёная инфраструктура способствует более устойчивому, ресурсосберегающему и эффективному развитию страны. Она может стать катализатором роста экономики, поскольку привлекает иностранных инвесторов, создаёт рабочие места, уменьшает экологические издержки и предлагает неопределимые преимущества для здоровья общества.

Стратегический подход к развитию зелёной инфраструктуры предполагает такие действия, как объединение заинтересованных сторон, которые вместе принимают решение о наилучшем использовании земли на местном уровне прозрачным и целостным способом. Однако значительные топливно-энергетические запасы, которыми обладает Азербайджан, и обеспечение населения природным газом может стать препятствием для развития альтернативной энергетики.

Менеджеры не оценивают потенциал энергетической эффективности компаний. Руководители компаний консервативно оценивают потенциал экономии энергии в размере 10-15%, в то время как ведущие эксперты могут добиться экономии от 20 до 30%. Азербайджанские компании используют ограниченные аудиты энергетических возможностей и резервов и недооценивают преимущества иностранного финансирования. Около 50% опрошенных компаний обнаружили и признали, что основной причиной неэффективности энергетического сбережения является нехватка средств. Однако лишь четверть азербайджанских компаний обратилась за иностранным финансированием. Отсюда можно сделать вывод, что слабое внешнее финансирование означает лишь одно, что меры, которыми могут воспользоваться компании для сбережения энергии дорогостоящие, а процедуры в области эффективного использования энергии трудоёмкие и сложные.

### Заключение

Суммируя все это, следует отметить следующие варианты инструментов, которые

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	ПИИЦ (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

можно использовать в зеленой налогово-бюджетной политике: 1) инструменты экологического налога (например, налог на выбросы углерода); 2) штраф за интенсивное загрязнение; 3) зеленые субсидии для поощрения положительной экологической деятельности (например, «питательный» рецепт), гранты, займы; 4) устранение предоставления субсидий на экологически вредные виды деятельности; 5) прямые государственные расходы (например, организация научно-исследовательской деятельности для экологически чистой инфраструктуры или чистых технологий).

Привлечение частных инвестиций ускорит развитие регионов, будет способствовать полной интеграции зелёной инфраструктуры в стратегические цели регионального развития для того, чтобы стать стандартным компонентом территориального развития. Проведение политики местного управления во развитие зелёной инфраструктуры могут применяться в различных масштабах: создание дождевых садов, проницаемых тротуаров, зелёных крыш,

плантаторов инфильтрации, энергосберегающих жилых и служебных помещений.

В Азербайджане «зелёная» экономика, использование альтернативных источников энергии, подготовка специалистов в этой области и обучение потребителей энергии являются серьёзными проблемами, которые можно преодолеть привлечением инвестиций.

Существуют некоторые меры, которые побуждают менеджеров повысить свою конкурентоспособность с целью достижения более высокой энергетической эффективности: создание более широкого спектра информации об энергетической эффективности, подготовка плана и проведение организационных мер по снижению потребления энергии внутри компании, таких как осведомлённость и поощрение сотрудников за более эффективное использование энергии. Оценка экономической информации стратегии энергетической эффективности должна подвести компании к принятию инвестиционных решений по привлечению иностранных инвестиций.

## References:

1. (2004). *Official website of the President of Azerbaijan Ilham Aliyev Presidential Decree on the approval of the state program "On the use of alternative and renewable energy sources in the Republic of Azerbaijan"* Retrieved April 08, 2019, from <https://en.president.az/>
2. (2015). *Report of the United Nations Conference on Environment and Development*, Rio de Janeiro, June 3-14, 1992 A/CONF.151/26/Rev.1 (Vol. I), pp. 3–7. Retrieved April 03, 2019, from <http://gbpp.org/wp-content/uploads/2015/10/211020152.pdf>
3. (2013). *Secretariat energy charter. Review of Azerbaijan's energy efficiency policy.* pp.71-89.
4. (n.d.). *Bizim Yol [Our Road] – social-political, socio-economic online newspaper.* Retrieved 2019, from <https://www.bizimyol.info/az/news/66667.html>
5. (n.d.). *Eine Grüne Infrastruktur für Europa.* pp.7-9. Retrieved 2019, from <http://ec.europa.eu/environment/nature/ecosystems/docs/GI-Brochure-210x210-DE-web.pdf>
6. Ral'f Fyuks (2016). *Zelonaya revolyutsiya Ekonomicheskij rost bez ushcherba dlya ekologii.* Moscow: Izdatel'skiy dom «Al'pina non-fikshn», pp.5-6. [*Ralph Fuks Green Revolution Economic growth without damage to the environment.* Moscow: Publishing house "Alpina non-fiction" 159p. P. 5-6] (In Russ)
7. (2019). *Market Analysis Azerbaijan.* p.11.
8. (2017). *Chief Editor Doctor of Economic Sciences Vusal Musaev Center for Analysis of Economic Reforms and Communiations// Overview of the economic reforms of Azerbaijan //March 2017 Strategic road maps on national economy and main sectors of economy.* p.16. Retrieved 2019, from [http://iqtisadiislahat.org/store//media/documents/islahatlar\\_icmali/Mart%20buraxilisi/ru/strateji%20vol%20x%C9%99rit%C9%99si%20-ru.pdf](http://iqtisadiislahat.org/store//media/documents/islahatlar_icmali/Mart%20buraxilisi/ru/strateji%20vol%20x%C9%99rit%C9%99si%20-ru.pdf)
9. (n.d.). *Tax Code of the Republic of Azerbaijan article 199.7 – 199.11*
10. Aliyev, R. A., & Ismailova, G. F. (2015). *Zelonaya ekonomika v Azerbaydzhanskoj Respublike: predposylki i napravleniya razvitiya. Internet-zhurnal «Naukovedeniye» – ISSN 2223-5167 Tom 7 № 6* doi: 10.15862/107EVN615 ["Green economy" in the Republic of Azerbaijan: preconditions and directions of development. Internet-journal "Naukovedenie"] <http://naukovedenie.ru/PDF/107EVN615pdf>



## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHII (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

SOI: [1.1/TAS](#) DOI: [10.15863/TAS](#)

## International Scientific Journal Theoretical & Applied Science

p-ISSN: 2308-4944 (print) e-ISSN: 2409-0085 (online)

Year: 2019 Issue: 04 Volume: 72

Published: 30.04.2019 <http://T-Science.org>

QR – Issue



QR – Article



**Pedagogy. Psychology. Innovations in the field of education.**

**T.A. Konurbayev**  
Candidate of psychological Sciences,  
Kyrgyz state university named after I.Arabayeva

**S.M. Ussenova**  
Master of Psychology,  
Taraz State University named after Dulati

## METHODS OF EXPERIMENTAL STUDY OF THE EMOTIONAL CONDITION OF THE TEACHER

**Abstract:** The article analyzes the main approaches to the problem of the role of emotions in pedagogical activity, mechanisms for managing emotional state, and considers the main aspects of the teacher's pedagogical activity. Analysis of the problems studied during the study showed that there is also the problem of the development of the teacher's emotional sensitivity.

**Key words:** teacher, method, sensitivity, conflict

**Language:** Russian

**Citation:** Konurbayev, T. A., & Ussenova, S. M. (2019). Methods of experimental study of the emotional condition of the teacher. *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 04 (72), 576-581.

**Soi:** <http://s-o-i.org/1.1/TAS-04-72-80> **Doi:**  <https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2019.04.72.80>

## МЕТОДИКИ ЭКСПЕРИМЕНТАЛЬНОГО ИССЛЕДОВАНИЯ ЭМОЦИОНАЛЬНОГО СОСТОЯНИЯ УЧИТЕЛЯ

**Аннотация:** В статье проанализированы основные подходы к проблеме роли эмоций в педагогической деятельности, механизмы управления эмоциональным состоянием, рассмотрены основные аспекты педагогической деятельности учителя. Анализ изученных в ходе исследования проблем показал, что существует также проблема развития эмоциональной чувствительности учителя.

**Ключевые слова:** учитель, методика, чувствительность, конфликт

### Introduction

Научно обоснованный анализ деятельности учителя является основой совершенствования учебного процесса. Анализируя практику учителей, ставится цель – выявить связь между деятельностью учителя и результатами его труда, выраженными в умственном развитии и эмоциональном комфорте учащихся, их культуре, эрудиции, умении применять теорию на практике, быть психологически здоровыми личностями. Диагностика призвана определить действенность старых методов обучения, традиционных методик и разумное сочетание нововведений без психологической травмы и эмоционального негативизма против нововведений на рубеже общеобразовательного процесса обучения. Далее выявляется знание учителем типичных черт и индивидуальных эмоциональных особенностей собственной личности и школьников. Это

позволяет активно использовать коллективные, групповые и индивидуальные формы работы с детьми на уроке, опираясь на их силы и способности, осуществлять коррекцию общей работы, привлекать коллег и сильных учеников к работе со слабыми. В диагностике мы стремились четко выделить все требования к анализу работы учителя:

1. Всякие факты, полученные при анализе работы учителя, были осмыслены, приведены к определенной идее, из которых потом вытекали рекомендации.

2. Выявлялось соотношение между затраченными педагогическими усилиями и результатом работы учителя. (иногда педагог добивается высоких результатов за счет дополнительных занятий, перегрузок домашними заданиями, т.е. успех приходил в этом случае в результате перенапряжения сил учителя и

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	ПИИЦ (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

учащихся). Высокие результаты в таких случаях не были оценены положительно, поскольку достигались за счет снижения качества обучения по другим предметам и вносили дисгармонию в учебный процесс и эмоциональному напряжению как ученика, так и самого учителя.

3. Изучалось эмоциональное влияние учителя на ученика в процессе обучения и воспитания, зрелость его наблюдательного мастерства, чувствительности и эмоционально – психологические травмы личностного и профессионального характера.

4. Выявлялись способности учителя к самоанализу и самооценке совместной деятельности, поскольку от этого зависит рост его педагогического мастерства, отношение к критике в свой адрес, требовательность к своей работе и эмоциональной стабильности в психическом состоянии учащихся.

### Materials and Methods

Важную роль в оперативном анализе занимает самоанализ учителя.

Учителя анализировали собственные уроки, качество знаний, умений и навыков учащихся, различные виды своего планирования, результативность своей ежедневной работы. Цель самоанализа урока учителем являлась: проникновение учителем в сущность своей деятельности, определение причин разного рода недостатков в своей работе. Совершенствование учебного процесса в эмоционально – здоровой обстановке, повышение воспитанности детей и психологического комфорта в классе, а также мастерства учителя, принято считать основными показателями эффективности урока [1].

Учебный процесс сопровождается повышением напряженности, тревожности, нервозности, эмоциональными всплесками и перегрузками. Перестройка современной школы привела к утрате привычных для учителя авторитарных средств управления учениками. Эти обстоятельства увеличивают эмоциональную насыщенность напряженного педагогического труда[2].

Учитывая вышесказанное, мы решили провести диагностику эмоционального состояния учителей. Группа испытуемых была уравновешена по возрастному и социально – образовательному признакам:

- возраст испытуемых варьировал от 30 до 45 лет;
- все испытуемые имели высшее образование.

Исходя из теоретического анализа научной литературы, в качестве показателей эмоционального состояния нами были подобраны следующие психодиагностические методики:

1. С целью определения интенсивности проявления эмоции и каналов (средств) их выражения нами была использована методика «Выраженность эмоциональной экспрессии» (ВЭЭ) А.Е.Ольшанниковой.

А.Е.Ольшанникова выделила 3 фактора:

1 фактор - внешняя выразительность эмоций.

11 фактор – активность поведения под влиянием эмоций.

111 фактор – нарушение речи и поведения под влиянием эмоций.

2. Анкета «Невербальная выразительность учителя», разработанная Е.А.Петровой [3].

С помощью анкеты «Невербальная выразительность учителя», разработанной Е.А.Петровой, мы решили определить соответствие е самооценки учителя с оценкой учащихся по анализу своего невербального поведения во время урока.

Невербальная выразительность учителя включает в себе 3 основных блока особенностей.

1 блок. Формально – динамические параметры невербального поведения учителя:

– оптимальный темп невербальной выразительности, определяющийся динамикой смены мимики, жестов, поз, взглядов и т.д.

– адекватное количество употребляемых жестов, взглядов, мимических картин, поз, прикосновений и т.д.

– приемлемая амплитуда движений, не порождающая дискомфорта;

– адекватное разнообразие формально – динамических параметров невербального языка (амплитуда, плоскости выполнения).

2 блок. Эстетическая гармоничность т.е. общая качественная оценка невербального языка. Сюда входят:

– экспрессивная выразительность, т.е. в какой степени невербальные компоненты эмоционально яркие и завершены;

– гармоничность связи с речью, насколько мимика, жесты, позы, выражения лица сочетаются с речью, логически ее дополняют;

– гармоничность сочетания различных невербальных средств между собой;

– эстетичность.

3 блок. Способность к управлению и рефлексии невербального поведения в педагогическом общении. В этот блок входит управление и рефлексия невербального поведения в наиболее важных ситуациях педагогической деятельности и общении на уроке;

– привлечение внимания;

– повышение интереса;

– проявление требования;

– оценивание ответа;

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	РИИЦ (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

- раскрытие материала;
- выражение отношения.

Анкета содержит 16 утверждений, направленных на выявление невербально – коммуникативной выразительности учителя.

Показатель от 0 до 7 говорит о низком уровне невербальной выразительности, 7-13-средний уровень, 12-16-высокий уровень.

3. Анкета «Самооценка жестикуляции учителя на уроке» Е.А.Петровой.

Анкета содержит 7 утверждений, позволяющих определить уровень применения жестикуляции учителя на уроке.

4. Фрайбургский личностный опросник И.Фаренберга, Х.Зарга, Р.Гампеала [4].

Для изучения эмоциональности на личностном уровне нами был использован Фрайбургский личностный опросник авторов: И.Фаренберга, Х.Зарга, Р.Гампеала [5]. Это многофакторный личностный тест, пригодный для диагностики некоторых важных свойств личности. Он содержит 12 шкал. Нами были взяты показатели по следующим шкалам: невротичность, спонтанная агрессивность, депрессивность, раздражительность, реактивная раздражительность, уравновешенность и эмоциональная лабильность.

*Шкала невротичности* характеризует уровень невротизации личности. Высокие оценки соответствуют выраженному невротическому синдрому астенического типа со значительными психосоматическими нарушениями.

*Шкала спонтанной агрессивности* позволяет выявить и оценить психопатизацию интроспективного типа. Высокие оценки свидетельствуют о повышенном уровне психопатизации, создавшем предпосылки для импульсивного поведения.

*Шкала депрессивности* дает возможность диагностировать признаки, характерные для психопатологического депрессивного синдрома. Высокие оценки по шкале соответствуют наличию этих признаков в эмоциональном состоянии, в поведении, в отношении к себе и к социальной среде.

*Шкала раздражительности* позволяет судить об эмоциональной устойчивости. Высокие оценки свидетельствуют о неустойчивом эмоциональном состоянии со склонностью к аффективному реагированию.

*Шкала уравновешенности* отражает устойчивость к стрессу. Высокие оценки свидетельствуют о хорошей защищенности к воздействию стресс-факторов обычных жизненных ситуаций, базирующихся на уверенности в себе, оптимистичности и активности.

*Шкала реактивной агрессивности* имеет целью выявить наличие признаков

психопатизации экстратенсивного типа. Высокие оценки свидетельствуют о высоком уровне психопатизации, характеризующемся агрессивным отношением к социальному окружению и ярко выраженному стремлению к доминированию.

*Шкала эмоциональной лабильности.* Высокие оценки указывают на неустойчивость эмоционального состояния, проявляющегося в частных колебаниях настроения, повышенной возбудимости, раздражительности, недостаточной саморегуляции.

5. Методика «Эмоциональной направленности личности» Б.И.Додонова[6].

Методика «Эмоциональной направленности личности» Б.И.Додонова определяет стремление к определенным типам переживаний, к удовлетворению определенных потребностей Б.И.Додонов назвал эти стремления общей эмоциональной направленностью и разработал методику для их изучения. Он выделил 10 направленностей:

Альтруистические эмоции говорят о ярко выраженной потребности отдавать, делиться, содействовать, помогать.

Коммуникативные эмоции говорят о ярко выраженной потребности в общении.

Глорические эмоции – о потребности в славе.

Прагматические эмоции говорят о ярко выраженной потребности активно действовать, достигать поставленной цели, добиваться желаемых результатов.

Пугнистические эмоции связаны с потребностью рисковать, преодолевать опасности.

Романтические эмоции говорят о стремлении к необычному, таинственному.

Гностические эмоции связаны с потребностью в получении знаний о новом, неизвестном.

Эстетические эмоции – потребность в восприятии прекрасного.

Гедонистические эмоции – эмоции, связанные с удовлетворением потребностей в телесном и душевном комфорте.

Акзигитивные эмоции – это эмоции, возникающие при наличии потребностей в накоплении вещей, выходящей за пределы практической нужды в них.

6. Тест Басса – Дарки (модифицированный вариант Г.А.Цукерман и Б.М.Мастеровым)[7].

В опроснике, дифференцирующем проявления агрессии и враждебности, А.Басс и А.Барки выделили следующие виды реакций:

Физическая агрессия – использование физической силы против другого лица.

Косвенная – агрессия, окольным путем направленная на другое лицо, или ни на кого не направленная.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	РИИЦ (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

Раздражение – готовность к проявлению негативных чувств при малейшем возбуждении (вспыльчивость, грубость).

Негативизм – оппозиционная манера в поведении от пассивного сопротивления до активной борьбы против установившихся обычаев и законов.

Обида – зависть и ненависть к окружающим за действительные и вымышленные действия.

Подозрительность – в диапазоне от недоверия и осторожности по отношению к людям до убеждения в том, что другие люди планируют и приносят вред.

Вербальная агрессия – выражение негативных чувств как через форму (крик, визг), так и через содержание словесных ответов (проклятия, угрозы).

Чувство вины – выражает возможное убеждение субъекта, что он является плохим человеком, что поступает зло, а также ощущаемые им угрызения совести.

Под агрессивностью можно понимать свойство личности, характеризующееся наличием деструктивных тенденций, в основном в области субъект – субъектных отношений. Вероятно, деструктивный компонент человеческой активности является необходимым в созидательной деятельности, так как потребности индивидуального развития с неизбежностью формируют в людях способность к устранению и разрушению препятствий, преодолению того, что противодействует этому процессу.

Агрессивность имеет качественную и количественную характеристики. Как и всякое свойство, она имеет различную степень выраженности: от почти полного отсутствия до ее определенного предельного развития. Каждая личность должна обладать определенной степенью агрессивности. Отсутствие ее приводит к пассивности, ведомости, конформности и т.д. Чрезмерное развитие ее начинает определять весь облик личности, которая может стать конфликтной, неспособной на сознательную кооперацию.

Вопросник состоит из 40 утверждений, на которые испытуемый отвечает «да» или «нет».

7. Диагностика межличностных отношений Т.Лири (ДМО) [8].

Опросник представляет собой набор, состоящий из 128 характерологических утверждений. Он предназначен для измерения степени выраженности следующих свойств, которые проявляются в межличностных отношениях:

- 1) доминантность, склонность к руководству, лидерству;
- 2) уверенность в себе, самостоятельность;
- 3) непреклонность, воля, настойчивость, консерватизм;

4) независимость, отчужденность, холодность, дистанция в общении;

5) зависимость, подчиненность, неприспособленность;

6) неуверенность в себе, незрелость, несамостоятельность;

7) общительность, уживчивость, ориентация на мнения окружающих;

8) отзывчивость, самопожертвование, альтруизм.

Степень выраженности каждого оценивается по 16-бальной шкале.

8. Проективная методика «Кактус» М.Панфиловой[9].

Методика дает возможность получить общую характеристику личности. Можно увидеть состояние эмоциональной сферы. Выявляются следующие показатели: агрессивность, импульсивность, эгоцентризм, стремление к лидерству, тревога, экставертированность, интровертированность, скрытность, осторожность, страх и др.

Анкета «Изучение интеллектуального и эмоционального состояния школьника» Автор А.Е. Коротаева.

Состоит из 20 утверждений. Определяются показатели интеллектуально – эмоциональной напряженности и тревожности, позитивного или негативного эмоционального и интеллектуального состояния учащегося, позитивной или негативной ориентации учебно-воспитательных взаимодействий в отношениях между учителем и учеником.

10. Методика САН (самочувствие, активность, настроение).

Разработана В.А.Доскиным, Н.А.Лаврентьевой, В.Б.Шарай, М.П.Мирошниковым в 1973 году.

САН представляет собой карту (таблицу), которая содержит 30 пар слов, отражающих исследованные особенности психоэмоционального состояния. На бланке обследования (смотрите приложение) между полярными характеристиками располагается рейтинговая шкала. Испытуемым предлагают соотнести свое состояние с определенной оценкой на шкале. При обработке результатов исследования оценки пересчитываются в «сырые» баллы от 1 до 7. Количественный результат представляет собой сумму первичных баллов по отдельным категориям.

11. Методы математической статистики: Т-критерий Стьюдента, коэффициент ранговой корреляции Спирмена, критерий  $\chi^2$  (хи-квадрат)[10].

На констатирующем этапе эксперимента нами было проведено исследование по изучению отношения педагогов к эмоциональным состояниям, возникающим в его работе. Было

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	ПИИЦ (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

проведено первоначальное анкетирование, в котором приняли участие 47 учителей средних общеобразовательных школ № 12, 54, 55, 5, педагоги политехнического колледжа города Тараза.

Анкета состояла из 8 вопросов:

1. «Есть ли у вас вредные привычки, от которых Вам хотелось бы избавиться?» - 42% ответили «да» и проявили желание избавиться от них.

2. «Вам приходилось жалеть, что в какой-то ситуации вы вели себя не лучшим образом?» - 59% ответили положительно.

3. «Всегда ли Вы спокойны и сдержаны?» - 87% ответили отрицательно.

4. «Умеете ли Вы управлять своими эмоциями?» - 63% ответили «нет», «не всегда».

5. «Чувствительны ли Вы к изменениям эмоционального настроения во время уроков?» - 72% ответили «нет», 11% «замечаю, но ничего не предпринимаю», 17% «да, но не уверена, как изменить ситуацию».

6. «Влияет ли Ваше эмоциональное состояние на процесс обучения?» 94% ответили утвердительно.

7. «Замечают ли учащиеся Ваше эмоциональное состояние, настроение на уроках?» 100% ответили «да».

8. «Хотелось бы Вам научиться приемам чувствования, наблюдения, и контролирования эмоциональной ситуацией в классе?» 100% ответили утвердительно.

В эксперименте принимали участие учащиеся 5,9,11 классов школы №13 и школы №36 города Тараза, а также 3 группы студентов в количестве 75 человек электротехнического колледжа города Тараза. Проведено первоначальное анкетирование также среди учащихся и студентов, в котором приняли участие ученики среднего и старшего звена: 5 классы 42 ученика, 9 классы 22 ученика, 11 классы 47 учащихся сш №36, 5 классы 38 учеников, 9 классы 24 ученика, 11 классы 23 учащихся сш №13, 3 группы студентов в количестве 75 человек Электротехнического колледжа города Тараза. (Итого: 290)

Анкета состояла из 3 вопросов:

1. «Замечаете ли Вы настроение Вашего учителя?» 96% ответили утвердительно.

2. «Часто ли учитель повышает голос, чтобы установить порядок в классе?» 87% ответили «почти всегда», 4% «иногда», 9% «устанавливает тишину жестом»

3. «Помогает ли Вам хорошее настроение учителя в усвоении нового материала?» 100% ответили «да».

## Conclusion

Сделав качественный анализ полученных результатов, мы пришли к выводу, что большинство учителей тревожны, не уверены в себе, не умеют чувствовать эмоциональную ситуацию, не верно выбирают приемы управления эмоциями и собой.

На начальной стадии эксперимента проводилась диагностика степени осознанности учителем необходимости изменений и затруднений учителя в педагогической практике. Анкета включала 5 вопросов.

На вопрос:

1. «Хотели бы Вы расширить свои знания в области психологии эмоций?» все испытуемые ответили «да».

2. «Желаете ли Вы научиться приемам чувствования и сенситивной наблюдательности?» - все выразили свое согласие.

3. «Считаете ли Вы, что эмоциональная сенситивность повысит уровень знаний у учащихся?» - все испытуемые ответили утвердительно.

4. «Применяли ли Вы на практике методы саморегуляции» - практически все испытуемые ответили «нет».

5. «Считаете ли Вы эмоциональность существенным компонентом педагогической деятельности?» - практически все ответили «да».

Проанализировав полученные ответы, мы пришли к выводу, что учителю необходимо диагностировать некоторые личностные особенности с тем, чтобы в дальнейшем у него появилась потребность коррекции своего поведения и эмоционально – сенситивной сферой.

## References:

- Groshev, I. V. (1997, Oct. 10-12). *Psihologiya pedagogicheskogo takta i didaktogennye nevrozy* / Sb. Tezisev 2-j Ezhegodnoj Vserossijskoj Konferencii «Prakticheskaya psihologiya v shkole (celi i sredstva)». p.206.
- Berns, R. (1986). *Razvitie YA-koncepcii i vospitanie*. (p.420). Moscow: Progress.
- Yanotovskaya, Y. V. (1987). *Individual'nost' pedagoga i lichnost' uchashchegosya // Psihologiya razvivayushchejsya lichnosti/Pod*

**Impact Factor:**

<b>ISRA (India)</b>	<b>= 3.117</b>	<b>SIS (USA)</b>	<b>= 0.912</b>	<b>ICV (Poland)</b>	<b>= 6.630</b>
<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE)</b>	<b>= 0.829</b>	<b>PIHII (Russia)</b>	<b>= 0.156</b>	<b>PIF (India)</b>	<b>= 1.940</b>
<b>GIF (Australia)</b>	<b>= 0.564</b>	<b>ESJI (KZ)</b>	<b>= 8.716</b>	<b>IBI (India)</b>	<b>= 4.260</b>
<b>JIF</b>	<b>= 1.500</b>	<b>SJIF (Morocco)</b>	<b>= 5.667</b>	<b>OAJI (USA)</b>	<b>= 0.350</b>

- red. A.V.Petrovskogo; NII obshchej i pedagogicheskoy psihologii. Akademiya ped.nauk SSSr. (pp.147-157). Moscow: Pedagogika.
- Sinyavskaya, T. V. (1999). O professional'noj deformacii lichnosti sotrudnikov nalogovoj policii. *Obozrenie psihiatrii i medicinskoj psihologii im. V.M.Bekhtereva. Spb., №3*, pp.78-79.
  - Miller, S. A. (2002). *Psihologiya razvitiya: metody issledovaniya*. (pp.144-150). Spb.: Piter.
  - Sonin, V. A. (1998). *psiholog – pedagogicheskij analiz professional'nogo mentaliteta uchitelya*. Avtoreferat na soiskanie uch. st. d. ps. Nauk. (p.49). Moscow.
  - Madaneiva, Z. B. (2002). *Psihologicheskie osnovy upravleniya emocional'nym sostoyaniem uchitelya*. (p.25). Almaty.
  - Mitina, L. M. (1998). *Psihologiya professional'nogo razvitiya uchitelya*. (p.200). Moscow: Flinta; MPSI.
  - Posashkova, I. P. (2004). *Psihologicheskie osobennosti sovremennogo uchitelya i usloviya ego pozitivnogo razvitiya*: Avtoreferat kand. Diss. (p.22). Moscow.
  - Guggenbuhl–Graig, A. (1997). *Vlast' arhetipa v psihoterapii i medicine*. Per. S nem. (pp.77-78). Spb.: B.S.K.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHII (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

SOI: [1.1/TAS](#) DOI: [10.15863/TAS](#)  
**International Scientific Journal**  
**Theoretical & Applied Science**

p-ISSN: 2308-4944 (print) e-ISSN: 2409-0085 (online)

Year: 2019 Issue: 04 Volume: 72

Published: 30.04.2019 <http://T-Science.org>

QR – Issue



QR – Article



**D.A. Nurmanova**  
Doctor of philosophy (Ph. D.),  
associate Professor  
of Andijan State University

**SECTION 29. Literature. Folklore. Translation Studies.**

## TEXT AS A UNIVERSAL FORM OF REPRESENTATION OF "PART FROM THE WHOLE»

**Abstract:** This article deals with such a complex, multi-level category as "text" in the light of the problem of its integrity, as well as in the context of modern anthropocentric studies, which form the basis of individuality as a Creator and consumer, interpreter of texts. On the basis of the theoretical basis, the idea that the text is a universal form of implementation and representation of the world, as well as, is a "part of the whole."

**Key words:** Text, context, representation, receptivity, dialogue, communication.

**Language:** Russian

**Citation:** Nurmanova, D. A. (2019). Text as a universal form of representation of "part from the whole». *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 04 (72), 582-585.

**Soi:** <http://s-o-i.org/1.1/TAS-04-72-81> **Doi:**  <https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2019.04.72.81>

### ТЕКСТ, КАК УНИВЕРСАЛЬНАЯ ФОРМА РЕПРЕЗЕНТАЦИИ «ЧАСТИ ОТ ЦЕЛОГО»

**Аннотация:** В данной статье рассматривается такая сложная, многоуровневая категория как «текст» в свете проблемы ее целостности, а также в русле современных антропоцентрических исследований, ставящих в основу индивидуальность, как создателя и потребителя, интерпретатора текстов. На основе теоретического базиса, приводится мысль о том, что текст является универсальной формой реализации и репрезентации окружающего мира, а также, представляет собой «часть от целого».

**Ключевые слова:** Текст, контекст, репрезентация, рецептивность, диалог, коммуникация.

#### Введение

В современных антропоцентрических науках и дисциплинах, основанных на принципе «человек в центре мира» и предполагающих междисциплинарный, интегрированный подход в изучении того или иного факта, явления, категории термина как «текст», и его места в гуманитарной системе знаний, является одним из самых актуальных. На сегодняшний момент мы встречаем множество определений термина «текст», остановимся на тех, которые являются перспективными и отражающими ключевыми векторы нашего исследования: И.Р.Гальперин в определении текста прежде всего выделяет грамматико-когезиальные связи и понятие целостности. Он пишет: «... Текст - это произведение речетворческого процесса, обладающее завершённостью, объективированное в виде письменного документа, литературно обработанное в соответствии с типом этого

документа, произведение, состоящее из названия (заголовок) и ряда особых единиц (сверхфразовых единиц), объединённых разными типами лексической, грамматической, логической, стилистической связи, имеющее определённую целенаправленность и прагматическую установку...» [4, с.18] или «...это письменное сообщение, объективное в виде письменного документа, состоящее из ряда высказываний, объединённых разными типами лексической, грамматической и логической связи, имеющее определённый моральный характер, прагматическую установку и соответственно литературно обработанное...» «Текст предполагает выделение в нем структурно - смысловых опор. Любой текст удовлетворяет требованиям конситуативности (соотнесенности с ситуацией общения) и контекстуальности (соотнесенности с другими текстами)...» [9, с. 46]

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	РИИЦ (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

### Основная часть

Определение текста, как основополагающей категории в искусстве и литературе, есть не что иное, как представление текста в форме пространства, вмещающего в себя ту или иную информацию-аксиологию. Ценность – это незаменимый элемент любого текста, именно в ней скрываются потенции и возможности текста, именно аксиология определяет дальнейшее существование или не существование текста, его многочисленные трансформации на уровне сюжетов и мотивного спектра в литературоведении, в живописи, музыки. Текст (будь то художественное произведение, полотно художника или творение композитора) есть «часть от целого» контекста. Тезис Аристотеля о том, что цельность, создается из частей, как нельзя лучше подходит для рассмотрения категории «текст». Каждый текст не может быть расшифрован без привлечения контекста, именно он позволяет создать объективную картину, в то же время, тексты, созданные автором (произведения литературы, музыки и живописи в хронологическом срезе, в их эволюции) могут в корне отличаться друг от друга: так как, творец, мог находиться под влиянием, быть в том или ином социально-историческом, культурно-философском контексте эпохи. Все произведения одного автора, таким образом могут создать метатекст, с одним доминантным строем – линией, определяющей специфику творца и его творений в контекста времени, эпохи. Текст художественного произведения является одним из самых сложных текстов по своей, как внешней, так и внутренней структуре. Форма и содержание текстового пространства представляет собой цельную систему, которую можно рассматривать как фрагментарно, объединяя в дальнейшем отдельные части в единое целое, так и рассматривать по принципу «от части к целому», «от формы к содержанию». Таким образом, мы можем реконструировать тот или иной сегмент текста, при этом эта реконструкция будет обоснованной на конкретных примерах и иллюстрациях, с привлечением как биографических, так и художественно-исторических, социально-культурологических дискурсов. Обратим внимание на следующую мысль: «...Текст художественного произведения создается одним писателем, как редкое исключение - двумя писателями, еще реже - группой авторов.... Все в тексте, начиная от собственно текста и кончая знаками препинания, расположением абзацев или отдельных строк, призвано служить одной цели- достигнуть наибольшего художественного эффекта, с наибольшей силой выразить замысел художника...» [11,с.93]. «Художественный эффект», служащий для выражения доминантной

идеи и замыслов художника, является базисом в исследовании текста с лингвистической точки зрения. Рассмотрение текста на разных уровнях его анализа предполагает знания текстолога. Текстология, как наука помогающая исследователям смоделировать и верно истолковать, воссоздать точный, ясный текст произведения, предлагает анализировать текст, с таких точек зрения как, установление точного текста произведения. Т.е. то, что один и тот же текст может иметь множество вариантов, как созданных и написанных самим автором, так и в форме различных изданий редактора. Таким образом, создается целая сфера близких к друг другу текстов. но в отличии которых и скрыта их специфика. Возникает ряд вопросов, связанных с изменением основного текста, и именно факторы, повлиявшие на это представляют лингвистический и литературоведческий интерес.

Созданная таким образом, своеобразная «группа» или даже «сумма» одного и того текста в различных его вариантах, предполагает следующий этап-организацию (кодификацию) этих текстов, а также их комментирование.

Так называемый «реальный комментарий» самого текста позволит раскрыть те стороны, которые не было доселе доступны читателю.

В этом отношении интересным представляется высказывание Б.В.Томашевского: «Литературовед не может быть не текстологом, то есть лицом, не умеющим разобраться в тексте. Равно и текстолог явится в весьма жалком виде, если он не будет литературоведом, то есть не сумеет разобраться в смысле изучаемого и издаваемого текста» [17, с.57]. В то же самое время можно говорить и о «лингвистической», языковедческой стороне вопроса: если смотреть на текст только с точки зрения его «художественности», не обращая внимания на лингвистический пласт, то рассмотрение текста может оказаться неполным, незавершенным, не имеющим «целостность». С целостностью текста связано и понятие «точности текста», именно максимальная точность текста, т.е. своеобразная возможность наиболее полного и четкого восприятия художественного произведения, от большого и до малого проецирует его восприятие и установление связи между текстом и его создателем, между текстом создателя и читателя. Эта сложная рецептивность, как способность получать и извлекать представления, отраженная во взаимосвязи текста, как живой ткани, с человеком, может раскрыть новые грани изучения текста, как сложной многоуровневой системы. Текст - это не только определенный набор и система словестно-логических или художественно-выразительных средств, текст - это и общение. Именно такое определение приводит М.Бахтин, указывая на текст, как экзистенциально



## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	РИИЦ (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

важный элемент действительности: «Быть - значит общаться. «Жить, - значит, участвовать в диалоге — вопрошать, внимать, ответственность, соглашаться и т.п. [1, с.344] В этом диалоге человек участвует весь и всю жизнь: глазами, губами, руками, душой, духом, всем телом, поступками. Он вкладывает всего себя в слово, и это слово входит в диалогическую ткань человеческой жизни, в мировой симпозиум» [2, с.351]. Таким образом, мы можем увидеть теснейшую связь «части и целого» т.е. человека и текста, как они создают друг друга. Ю. М. Лотман в своих работах выделяя в тексте черты интеллектуальной личности, смог наделить текст чертами человека и найти возможности отождествления этих двух, на первый взгляд абсолютно противоположных и разнородных явлений действительности - текста и человека. Ю. М. Лотман обозначал текст следующим образом: «сложное устройство, хранящее многообразные коды, способное трансформировать получаемые сообщения и порождать новые, как трансформационный генератор, обладающий чертами интеллектуальной личности» [12, с.130]. Разноаспектное изучение категории «текст» позволяет нам каждый раз взглянуть на него по-новому, с точки зрения терминологического аппарата той или иной науки, порой в корне отличающихся друг от друга. Именно этот момент и позволяет тексту, как универсальному понятию, постоянно видоизменяться, и трансформируясь в нечто большее, входит в диалогические и полифонические связи с другими «текстами». Также разноаспектное изучение текста, интерпретация и толкования, связанные с ним, указывают на широкие возможности функционирования текста. Например, Г.В. Колшанский текст определяет следующим образом: «...текст - это связь по меньшей мере двух высказываний, в которых может завершаться минимальный акт общения - передача информации или обмен мыслями между партнёрами...» [8, с.10-14]. Обратим внимание на то, что здесь уже затрагивается не просто лингвистическая, а прагмалингвистическая сторона текста в

«действии», т.к. здесь мы уже видим «обмен мыслями». Тот факт, что текст не возможен без коммуникации, в самом широком смысле этого слова, не оспорим: «...Текст - это письменное по форме речевое произведение, принадлежащее одному участнику коммуникации, законченное и правильно оформленное...» [6, с.67]. В данном высказывании автор видит и реализацию авторской интенции, которая обязательно должна быть оформлена и высказана. Выделение в категории «текст» тех или иных параметров указывает на то, что он состоит из нескольких немаловажных признаков.

Так, например, Л. М. Лосева, исследуя прикладную сторону текстовых параметров, выделяет следующие признаки текста: «1) текст - это сообщение (то, что сообщается) в письменной форме; 2) текст характеризуется содержательной и структурной завершённостью; 3) в тексте выражается отношение автора к сообщаемому (авторская установка)» [11, с.4].

### Заключение

Текст, являясь, в первую очередь, продуктом нашего сознания, требует многостороннего его изучения. Благодаря современным методам анализа и рассмотрения одного и того же текста с разных точек зрения, появляется возможность, его как «реального» комментирования, так и дополнения «другими текстами». Так, Л.Н. Мурзин отмечает «... текст - это не просто продукт речевой деятельности, но и сам процесс создания продукта. Он не существует вне нашего сознания, вне процессов порождения и восприятия. Следовательно, текст по своей природе процессуален и динамичен. Это и результат нашей речевой деятельности, и в то же время сама деятельность...» [14, с.3].

Так, текст как «целостная единица общения» представляет собой замкнутую, иерархическую систему с множеством концепций, объединенных в единое целое.

### References:

1. Bakhtin, M. M. (1975). *Voprosy literatury i estetiki* [Tekst]. (p.234). Moscow: Iskusstvo.
2. Bakhtin, M. M. (1997). *Problema teksta v lingvistike, filologii i drugikh gumanitarnykh naukakh* [Tekst] // *Russkaya slovesnost'. Ot teorii slovesnosti k strukture teksta*. Antologiya / pod red. V.P. Neroznaka (Eds). (p.365). Moscow: Academia.
3. Bakhtin, M. M. (1979). *Estetika slovesnogo tvorchestva* [Tekst]. (p.254). Moscow: Iskusstvo.

**Impact Factor:**

<b>ISRA (India)</b> = <b>3.117</b>	<b>SIS (USA)</b> = <b>0.912</b>	<b>ICV (Poland)</b> = <b>6.630</b>
<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE)</b> = <b>0.829</b>	<b>PIHHI (Russia)</b> = <b>0.156</b>	<b>PIF (India)</b> = <b>1.940</b>
<b>GIF (Australia)</b> = <b>0.564</b>	<b>ESJI (KZ)</b> = <b>8.716</b>	<b>IBI (India)</b> = <b>4.260</b>
<b>JIF</b> = <b>1.500</b>	<b>SJIF (Morocco)</b> = <b>5.667</b>	<b>OAJI (USA)</b> = <b>0.350</b>

- Gal'perin, I. R. (1981). *Tekst kak ob"ekt lingvisticheskogo issledovaniya* [Tekst]. (p.164). Moscow: Nauka.
- Gal'perin, I. R. (1984). *O ponyatii «tekst»*. materialy nauchnoy konferentsii «Lingvistika teksta» - T. 1. (p.67, p.194). Moscow.
- Dridze, T. M. (1984). *Tekstovaya deyatel'nost' v strukture sotsial'noy kommunikatsii: problemy semiosotsiopsikhologii* [Tekst]. (p.143). Moscow: Nauka.
- Dridze, T. M. (1980). *Yazyk i sotsial'naya psikhologiya* [Tekst]. (p.174). Moscow.
- Kolshanskiy, G. V. (1985). *Lingvokommunikativnye aspekty rechevogo obshcheniya* [Tekst]. *Inostrannye yazyki v shkole, № 1*.
- (2000). *Kratkiy psikhologicheskiy slovar'* Rostov na Donu: Feniks L. A. Karpenko A. V. Petrovskiy. (p.295). Moscow.
- Likhachev, D. S. (1983). *Tekstologiya (Na materiale russkoy literatury 10-17 vekov)* [Tekst]. (p.193). Moscow.
- Loseva, L. M. (1980). *Kak stroitsya tekst* [Tekst]. (p.154). Moscow: Prosveshchenie.
- Lotman, Y. M. (1997). *Semiotika kul'tury i ponyatie teksta* [Tekst] // *Russkaya slovesnost'. Ot teorii slovesnosti k strukture teksta*. Antologiya / pod red. V.P. Neroznaka (Eds.). (p.295). Moscow: Academia.
- Lotman, Y. M. (1977). *Tekst i struktura auditorii* [Tekst]. *Trudy po znakovym sistemam*. (p.243). Tartu.
- Murzin, L. N. (1985). *Tekst kak interpretatsiya teksta* [Tekst] // *Vybor i organizatsiya tekstovogo materiala v sisteme professional'no-orientirovannogo obucheniya*. (136). Perm'.
- Murzin, L. N., & Shtern, A. S. (1991). *Tekst i ego vospriyatie* [Tekst]. (p.184). Sverdlovsk: Izd. Ural'skogo un-ta.
- Muchnik, B. S. (1985). *Chelovek i tekst* [Tekst]. (p.269). Moscow: Kniga.
- Tomashevskiy, B. V. (1989). *Tekstologiya. /Izbrannoe/*. (p.198). Moscow.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHII (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

SOI: [1.1/TAS](#) DOI: [10.15863/TAS](#)  
**International Scientific Journal**  
**Theoretical & Applied Science**

p-ISSN: 2308-4944 (print) e-ISSN: 2409-0085 (online)

Year: 2019 Issue: 04 Volume: 72

Published: 30.04.2019 <http://T-Science.org>

QR – Issue

QR – Article



**Nasiba Adhamovna Khaydarova**  
Andizhan State university  
Teacher of the department of Russian  
language and literature  
[nasiba1701@mail.ru](mailto:nasiba1701@mail.ru)

**SECTION 29. Literature. Folklore. Translation Studies.**

## REPRESENTATION OF THE CONCEPT “HORSE” IN THE HISTORICAL TRILOGY OF V.YAN

**Abstract:** The article on the material of V.G.Yan's of the historical trilogy, the novels "Chingiz Khan", "Batu" and "To the Last Sea" examines the image of a horse, which, when moving from novel to novel, transforms and acquires the status of a concept. The national picture of the world, on which the concept and the individual-authorial image of the world is based, makes it possible to identify a semantic-cultural range of additional meanings associated with the concept of the "horse" and to consider them in the context of the novel trilogy.

**Key words:** "Cosmo-Psycho-Logos", national picture of the world, model of the world, image of the world, representation, world modeling, concept, superconcept, image, novel space, context and discourse, individual author's picture of the world.

**Language:** Russian

**Citation:** Khaydarova, N. A. (2019). Representation of the concept "horse" in the historical trilogy of V.Yan. *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 04 (72), 586-591.

**Soi:** <http://s-o-i.org/1.1/TAS-04-72-82> **Doi:**  <https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2019.04.72.82>

### РЕПРЕЗЕНТАЦИЯ КОНЦЕПТА «КОНЬ» В ИСТОРИЧЕСКОЙ ТРИЛОГИИ В.ЯНА

**Аннотация:** В статье на материале исторической трилогии В.Г.Яна, романах «Чингиз Хан», «Батый» и «К «Последнему морю» рассматривается образ коня, который переходя из романа в роман, трансформируется и обретает статус концепта. Национальная картина мира, на которой базируется концепт и индивидуально-авторский образ мира, позволяет выявить семантико-культурологический ряд дополнительных значений, связанных с концептом «конь» и рассмотреть их в контексте романной трилогии.

**Ключевые слова:** «Космо-Психо-Логос», национальная картина мира, модель мира, образ мира, репрезентация, миромоделирование, концепт, сверхконцепт, образ, романное пространство, контекст и дискурс, индивидуально-авторская картина мира.

#### Введение

Историческая трилогия известного писателя-романиста В.Г.Яна (Янчевецкого), включающая в себя три романа- «Чингиз Хан», «Батый» и «К «Последнему морю» является произведением, рассмотрение которого невозможно без привлечения терминологического аппарата культурологии, лингвокультурологии, когнитивной лингвистики. Это объясняется тем, что основа романной трилогии находится в столкновении, противопоставлении и сравнении трех картин мира, описанных в текстовом пространстве: это восточная картина мира, монгольская картина мира и славянская картина

мира. Особенности перечисленных национальных картин мира, в контексте культурологической проблемы «свой - чужой» проявляются в возможностях функционирования и трансформации тех или иных образов, относящихся к национальным картинам мира. Более того, частотность их использования в тексте, их «обрастание» дополнительными значениями и «кочевание» из одной картины мира в другую, указывают на их универсальность, онтологичность и экзистенциальность.

Так, в данной работе, мы на основе образа коня, превратившегося в исторической трилогии В. Яна в концепт «конь» попытаемся

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	РИИЦ (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

расшифровать фрагмент национального «Космо-Психо-Логоса» и тем самым обозначить ценностные ориентации того или иного национального образа миромоделирования.

### Основная часть

Концепт, представляемый нами как «культурно-ментальный сгусток» [8,с.46] с бесконечной вереницей потенциалов и превращений, в зависимости от того в какой контекст и в какой индивидуально-авторский дискурс он попадает, может, в ходе динамического повествования (тем более в исторической трилогии, предполагающей переход от одного романного пространства в другой) перейти в категорию «сверхконцепта», т.е. доминирующего и обладающего новыми, максимально выраженными в тексте, значениями.

Таким образом, мы выводим в зону «сверхконцепта» образ коня, являющегося ключевым в историческом повествовании В. Яна, как в структурообразующем, так и в формально-содержательном плане. Обратим внимание на заглавия частей и глав исторической трилогии: «Неможен человек без коня», «Белый конь», «По следам коня», «Укрощение дикого коня», «Кони переплывают Итиль» и т.д. Заглавия, являясь концентрирующей формальной частью системы художественного произведения, в которых в конденсированной форме излагается «заглавная» [5,с.13] мысль как одной главы, так и всего произведения, так или иначе, являются ключом в раскрытии сущности текста, скрытых авторских интенций, лежащих на поверхности. Микрокосм исторической трилогии В.Яна окружен «ореолом» концепта «конь». Именно этот образ, претерпевая метаморфозы (от фразы «конь-огонь» и «конь-ветер» как сосредоточие стихийных первооснов в романной трилогии – до сакрально-мифологического существа-бога Судбдэ и его коня - Сэтэра, как идола) имеет ключевое значение, ибо в конце исторической трилогии, в романе «К Последнему морю» герои хотят построить храм коню, а на скале над пропастью и бесконечным водным пространством – поставить ему памятник.

Членение мира, его осознание, взгляд на окружающую действительность, понятия «рок, жизнь, судьба» – это все познается сквозь призму сверхконцепта «конь». Обратим внимание на следующие примеры: «Он (Бату-хан – Х.Н.) быстро шагнул через порог и увидел белого коня. – Вот конь, посланный мне небом! Это будет конь моих боевых побед, как белый Сэтэр, походный конь Чингиз-хана. Теперь я снова силен» [12,с.338] или «Без коня я неможен, как сокол с перебитыми крыльями! Какой я теперь воин! – И схватившись за виски, юноша со стоном повалился на землю... - Это был мой верный, испытанный друг! На нем я бросился в битву, и не раз он спасал меня от

смерти. Горе воину без коня!» [12,с.339]. «Пороговое пространство», отделяющее «свое» пространство от «чужого» является наиболее концентрированным и семантически наполненным местом для героя любого произведения. «Переступить порог» означает «вступить в чужое или новое пространство», а «чужое» предполагает неизвестность, страх за будущее, тревогу за свою жизнь. Из примера видно, что Бату-хан «быстро шагнул через порог», т.е. был готов в будущем испытаниям, но появление «белого коня» для него стало предзнаменованием Свыше: «конь, посланный мне небом» уточняет персонаж и к нему возвращаются потерянные «живительные» силы. Здесь мы можем также проследить «симпатическую связь» [3,с.68] между человеком и конем: есть конь – есть силы, нет коня – нет сил. Фраза героя «Я снова силен» означает не физические силы, а духовные силы, психологический настрой, ибо «если воин пал духом его конь не может скакать» [13,с.243].

Обратим внимание на два важных образа, которые стали универсальными в образовании пространственной микромодеи Вселенной в восточной национальной картине мира - это сокол и конь. Благодаря им воссоздаются конкретные пространственные координаты системы «верх (Небо) – низ (Земля)». В первом романе трилогии В.Яна «Чингиз-хан», строки вступления (пролог к произведению) «Читатель, салам!», начинаются следующей фразой: «Сокол в небе бессилён без крыльев. Человек на земле неможен без коня...» [12,с.7] и как нельзя лучше передают идею общности, выраженную посредством сакральных животных, как в структуре произведений, так и на символическом уровне. Эти предложения, относящиеся к паремиологическому фонду (как малый фольклорный жанр) восточной модели мира, рифмуется героем по имени Арапша в романе «Батый»: «...Без коня я неможен, как сокол с перебитыми крыльями...» таким образом герой объединяет в своем лице два животных тотема: сокола и коня, герой, являющийся носителем фрагмента национального «Космо-Психо-Логоса» [2,с.45] наделен внутренними качествами и характеристиками данных животных, он полностью идентичен и соотносим с окружающей его «ПриРодиной» [1,с.82].

В главе «Тропа жизни джигита» мы читаем: «Если ты спасешь моего вороного, можешь просить у меня все, что захочешь!» [12, с.341] или «Джигиты вытащили коня на тропинку» [12,с.342]. Путь-дорога человека определяется наличием/отсутствием друга – коня. То, что «джигиты вытащили коня» означает, что они не просто спасли жизнь всаднику, падавшего в обрыв и схватившегося за выступ скалы, - это не что иное

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	РИИЦ (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

как дар «второй жизни» или «возвращение к жизни», к нее «тропе» вместе с конем. Путь-дорога и как пространственная локация, и употребляемая в значении «жизнь, судьба» невозможна для героя без коня. Именно поэтому прототип В.Яна в произведении, носитель Знания и Истины странник-дервиш Хаджи Рахим аль-Багдади произносит следующее: *«Рассказывай дальше, конь к тебе вернется!»* [12, с.342], т.е. живи и твори Добро и дальше, и конь, как верный друг, еще к тебе вернется, или встретиться на твоём пути.

В то же самое время цвето-световая символика, связанная с образом коня, также несет в себе смысловую нагрузку: *«...Впереди скакала сотня разведчиков на рыжих поджарых конях. За ними следовала сотня на молочно-белых конях...Субудай сидел, согнувшись, на саврасом коне с длинным до земли черным хвостом...»* [13,с.347]. Значения цветовой символики образа коня передают архаичные мировоззрения героев на мироздание. Цвет коня-это черта характера или натура его обладателя - всадника. Так, в романной трилогии победители и смелые джигиты, в основном скачут на вороных (черных) или молочно-белых (как Небесный конь бога войны Сульдэ) конях. Вороной конь является конем-победителем, он самый выносливый и гордый.

Если обратиться к древним восточным эпосам, то например, в «Алпамыше» только вороной конь мог видоизменять и трансформировать свой цвет, исходя из того, в какой жизненной стадильности находился его хозяин. Так, вороной конь в эпосе «Алпамыш» имеет три цвета (триколор): сзади, сбоку и спереди он различен. Спереди легендарный конь из эпоса – белый, что в контексте произведения соотносится с рождением ребенка-сына, сбоку – серебристый, блестящий и это означает зрелость, возмужание, способность самостоятельно принимать сложные решения, а сзади конь черный, предвещающий конец жизни, смерть хозяина. Таким образом, мифопоэтизированное животное как конь может не только быть верным другом, но и представлять собой своеобразное тотемное животное, в котором скрыты силы и часть души героя. Именно поэтому, герои-монголы в романах В.Яна перед битвами «подпитываются» кровью: они пьют кровь живого коня. Этапы жизни героев, соотносимые с основными стадиями - «рождение», «зрелость» и «смерть» абсолютно идентичны со стадиями жизни коня: так на страницах романной трилогии мы видим, что рождение мужчины есть рождение и коня, который в недалеком будущем будет предназначен только для него. Выбор коня – это выбор судьбы и знак Свыше в понимании героев романной трилогии, смерть же коня – это потеря «части» жизни или смерть и самого героя. Цвет

коня, имеющий важное значение в контексте трилогии, не случаен: Бату-хан выбирает для себя только молочно-белых коней и даже их клички тесно связаны с символикой цвета. «Акчиан» так называют коня Бату-хана, что в переводе дает «Белый» («ок») «скорпион» («чаён»).

Если в славянской национальной картине мира конь «добрый», то в восточной он «верный», а в монгольской он «мудрый». Возвеличивание коня и придание ему наивысшего статуса присуще монгольской национальной картине мира: с ним советуются, только ему говорят сокровенное и только с ним делятся последним куском.

«Сливание» человека и коня и их превращение в нечто цельное, неразделимое, как мифологический кентавр в античных легендах, мы можем увидеть и на страницах исторической трилогии: *«Мусук, прозванный так за ловкость, тужке натянул» кушаком свой тонкий стан, вскочил на поджарого горбоносого коня и с длинным тонким укрюком в руке поскакал в сторону гнедого жеребца...»* [13,с.367] Описанный процесс «симпатической связи», т.е. полного соединения силы воли, душ, сердец и мыслей раскрывается в следующем примере: *«...Поджарый горбоносый степняк, на котором, пригнувшись к шее, мчался Мусук, так будто понимал тайные желания всадника. Не Мусук управлял конем, а скакун в одном порыве с охотником, несся за ускользавшим диким жеребцом, выскивая его среди сотен других коней...»* [13,с.368]. Умение слушать и слышать тайные желания и мысли друг друга - есть наивысшая точка соединения двух начал: человеческого и животного. Природная связь между человеком и конем накаляется именно во время скачки, когда жизнь одного находится в полном ведении другого. В главе «Укрощение дикого коня» мы можем наблюдать процесс «сливания» двух душ и доверительную беседу человека и коня: *«Арапша бросился к гнедому жеребцу, поймал его за повод, трепал по шее, называл ласкательными именами...- Поводи его шагом до захода солнца, не давай воды до полуночи. Это будет конь первейший, знаменитый!...»* [12,с.370] или *«Арапша отвернулся, не желая видеть, как удалялся его любимый белый Акчиан. Пучком травы он вытирал пот, струившийся по бокам своего нового коня. Ласково шептал ему: - Не грусти! Не жалею о потерянной свободе! Теперь ты стал моим другом...»*[12,с.371].

Поменяться конями означает и своеобразное «побратимство» – обычай закрепления мужской дружбы, братских отношений, но это «побратимство», корнями уходящее в славянский образ мира, реализуется в контексте иной национальной картины мира – в восточной (т.е. стать родными людьми, во имя великой цели): «Я

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	РИИЦ (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

*не отдам его! - Белый конь нужен мне! Я дам тебе взамен лучшего коня из этого табуна. Согласен? – Если мой конь нужен тебе не для того, чтобы водить его под парчовым черпаком по базару на удивление толпы, а для похода и для битвы, - я дарю тебе моего коня!...*» [12,с.346]. Герои (Арапша, а в дальнейшем верный друг и советник правителя и Бату-хан) познакомились, сдружились и «объединили концы мечей» благодаря коню, т.е. соединение героев на основе общности их целей возможно было только благодаря коню. Люди находят, теряют, узнают друг друга и «перевоплощаются» также благодаря коню.

Микрокосм коня предполагает наличие отдельно взятых, но не менее значимых частей тела этого животного. Здесь мы можем выделить как символические части тела самого животного (морда, копыта, хвост, уши и т.д.), так и предметы быта, связанные с сакральным животным (аркан, плеть, седло, поводья, узда и т.д.). Обратимся к следующим фрагментам из романной трилогии: «У меня нет больше дома с белобородым отцом и сереброкудрой матерью, нет братьев, нет сестер - все улетело, как подхваченный вихрем пучок соломы!... У меня остался один друг-конь хана Баяндера с плохим седлом...» [13,с.401]. Словосочетание «плохое седло» указывает и на материально плачевное состояние героя, и на его внутренние переживания: нет дома, нет Родины, нет родных и близких. На этом фоне конь является единственным другом, надеждой и опорой героя, но и то, у коня «плохое седло» и он не его собственность - он конь «хана Баяндера».

Седло, как предмет «быта» и часть сбруи, скрывает более глубокую семантическую наполненность, чем какая-либо другая часть «не органической» связи человека и животного. Седло, в первую очередь, это тот самый предмет, благодаря которому пеший превращается во всадника, именно седло является микромиром-проводником между человеком и конем.

Например, в романной трилогии полководцы не раз упоминают, что важные беседы ведутся и сокровенные мысли произносятся, только «в седле». В то же время фраза «под моим седлом» обозначает принадлежность того или иного коня всаднику: «*Это мой конь! Он под моим седлом!- кричал Арапша*» [12,с.363] или «*Он (Батый-Х.Н.) в седле учился быть воином и полководцем...*» [13,с.383]. Из последнего примера видно, что седло – это не только место почти постоянного пребывания воина, но и своеобразное место возвышения и почта. «Быть в седле» для воина, тоже самое, что и повелителю быть на троне, восседать на нем. В первом романе трилогии один из главных героев, сам Чингиз Хан, планируя и предчувствуя свою смерть, хочет оставаться «в седле» и выбирает смерть в походе.

Седло также символизирует динамичное состояние героя, жизнь, которого ценна только тогда, когда он может находиться «в седле». В то же самое время жизнь «без седла» приравнена к позору.

Другой незаменимый атрибут – плеть, указывает на то, что конь без плети, также как и плеть без коня невозможны в представлении героя: «*Арапша встал и показал на плеть, висевшую на поясе: - Вот все, что осталось от моего коня! Без коня я тоже далеко не уйду...*» [12,с.343]. Еще одна знаковая часть – это узда, т.е. «часть сбруи с ремнями и удилами, поводьями, надеваемые на голову упряжного животного» [7,с.82], прикосновение к которому есть прикосновение к «части тела» самого хозяина коня - всадника. Величие и неприкосновенность всадника, его положение, которое определяется как «находящийся выше остальных» (т.к. всадник на коне, он выше и следственно видит и знает больше окружающих) указывает на желание «коснуться узды»: «*Всякий хотел коснуться узды коня, на котором, подбоченившись, ехал старый Назар в козловой шубе, с кривой саблей на поясе...*» [12,с.375]. В контексте главы данный отрывок раскрывает мифопоэтизированную и фольклорную составляющую исторического повествования: старый воин, возвратившийся с битвы «на коне и в седле», означает, что он «живой, здоровый, готовый сказывать легенды стародавние». Т.е. старый воин много повидавший может поделиться сказаниями, мифами, сказками и легендами с последующим поколением - молодыми воинами. Опыт и диалог поколений, как незаменимые составляющие существования человечества на земле достигается именно благодаря тому, что воин сохранил связь с живой природой - с сакральным животным-конем.

Обратим внимание на следующий фрагмент текста: «*Субудай-багатур... с Джебэ-нойоном, Богурчи и наместником Китая, Мухури, составляли четыре копыта победоносного Чингиз-ханова коня. Только опираясь на эти четыре стальных копыта, Чингиз-хан мог пронестись от победы к победе... Пусть пронизательный Субудай-багатур решит: годится ли в джихангире Гуюк-хан? Удержат ли его руки поводья коня? Сумеет ли он повести войско для завоевания вселенной?...*» [13,с.386] «*Он (царевич-чингизид) возьмет в сильные руки повод Чингиз-ханова коня и поведет войско для покорения вселенной...*» [12,с.389] или «*... Мы приказываем нашему верному слуге, опытному в военных делах Субудай-багатуру, помочь нашему внуку Бату-хану твердо держать золотые поводья...*» [12,с.390] или «*...Бату-хан и «у стремени его» Субудай-багатур прибыли...*» [13,с.424]. Эти отрывки из второго романа

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	РИИЦ (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

трилогии «Батый» как нельзя лучше раскрывают почти весь спектр и многообразие функционирования сложного многоуровневого концепта «конь» в прозаическом дискурсе В. Яна.

Метафоризация, выражается посредством таких приемов как метонимия и синекдоха: обозначение части от целого – копыто коня; замена одного понятия другим, перенесение семантики слова с одного на другое, употребление одного слова вместо другого: Страна, государство – это «конь Чингиз-хана»; умение удержать поводья коня – это умение править страной и т.д.

Из отрывка видно, что не только человек, как часть природы, как индивид приближен к живой природе в образе коня, но и весь народ, нация и страна соотносима с эти животным. Вырисовывается схема человек=конь, государство (которое, возможно только в том случае, когда будет объединение людей)=конь. Причем конь, основателя Орды в образе «Великого Заоблачного «Потресателя Вселенной» Чингиз Хана. Использование этих же приемов мы можем обнаружить и в следующих примерах из текстов романов: «Мы повели идти покорять вселенную до Последнего моря, до того места, куда сможет ступить копыто монгольского коня... Я даю ему (Бату-хану) знамя с рыжим хвостом моего боевого коня...» [12,с.390]. Цель всего похода и желание каждого монгольского воина – это священное «омывание» копыт монгольских коней в воде «Последнего моря».

Возвеличивание коня-героя после его смерти выражено во втором предложении примера: «знамя с рыжим хвостом». Это указывает на национальную специфику миромоделирования в национальной картине мира: конь не только под всадником (живой конь, объединяющий в себе лучшие качества и передающий силу всех мировых стихий - огня, воды, земли, воздуха), но и над ним (конь-дух, т.е. часть коня-хвост, как свидетельство его «вечности» и абсолютного, постоянного пребывания в виде знамени целого отряда, полка).

Возвращаясь в пространственным координатам верх-низ (сокол в небе – конь на земле), мы выводим следующий, качественно отличный ее вектор, выраженный в «обрамлении» героев концептом «конь» (живое, динамичное животное под всадником и «вечно живое» над всадником: часть неживого коня - хвост, как знамя, несущее в себе «дух» победы), который, выводится в область витального.

Возвеличивание экзистенциального образа мы видим и в следующем отрывке: «...а сам пойду дальше, до Последнего моря - бросать под копыта моего коня встречающие народы!... Тогда на всю вселенную опустится монгольская рука!...» [12,с.417]. Жизнь не только человека, но всего народа ничтожна для монгольских завоевателей

по сравнению с жизнью монгольского коня Джихангира и Саин-хана – Батыя. Это мы наблюдаем в следующем фрагменте: «...если все войско будет повиноваться единственному и величайшему Саин-хану (доблестный), то вся вселенная будет лежать под копытами наших коней...» [13,с.420]. Отсчет времени и преодоление бесконечных пространств возможно только благодаря коню, но более того конь является универсальной мерой измерения пространственно-временных континуумов: ценность человека и народа определяется конем, пространства и военные переходы измеряются конем, время битв определяется конем... Воины в романе «К «Последнему морю» говорят: «...Пусть укажет нам дорогу знамя с хвостом Чингиз-ханова жеребца... выехал молодой смуглый монгол на белоснежном жеребце. Он выхрем взлетел на вершину кургана и осадил бесившегося коня на краю ската... Это Бату-хан... Под ним Сэтэр, белоснежный конь великого бога войны Сульдэ!» [12,с.390-391].

Модель мира, выраженная в схематичном виде как «воин на коне и на кургане» является определяющей в монгольской и восточной национальной картине мира. При этом как и мифопоэтическое животное «конь», так и воин-всадник на нем, переходят в разряд «вечно живых» - персонажей-архетипов. Тем самым выводится новый тип героя – «человекоконь» по исследованиям Г. Гачева в «Космосе кочевника» [1,с.57], или его инвариант, понять и представить который возможно благодаря античным легендам –это мифологический кентавр. «Восточный кентавр» - есть соединение мыслей, душ и интенций в мире природы в образах человека и коня.

### Заключение

Репрезентация, т.е. повторное описание, «вторичное» моделирование того образа, который уже функционирует в реальной действительности и представляет собой некую точку отсчета и точку опоры в национальных картинах мира – это образ коня. Он , переходя из одной части романа в другую, не просто повторяется, а приобретает сперва статус концепта (в пространстве одного романа), а в контексте трилогии выводится на уровень «сверхконцепта».

Репрезентация одного и того же образа в художественном тексте, тем более в динамичном, переходящем из одного в другое, как историческая трилогия, дает нам право говорить о том, что он не просто утрачивает свои канонические и традиционные определения, как литературоведческая категория, а «не вмещает» в себя то количество сем, коннотаций и ассоциаций (как индивидуально-авторских, так и

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	ПИИЦ (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

читательских), которые проецируются в тестовом дискурсе.

Это объясняется тем, что образ коня входит в такие активные зоны текста как: заглавие (как части в романе, так и глав в ней), эпиграф, пролог, эпилог, лиро-эпическое и фольклорное пространство текста, выраженное в форме песен, былин, стихотворений и т.д.

Именно благодаря репрезентации-представлению, которое меняется в ходе времени, внутренних состояний, как автора, так и читателя, эмоционального настроения и расположения к тексту, образ коня, в прозаическом дискурсе В.Яна перешел в категорию концепта, а следственно и в концептуально важный элемент как национальной, так и индивидуально-авторской концептосферы.

## References:

1. Gachev, G. D. (2001). *Kosmos kochevnika, zemledel'tsa*. (p.353). Moscow.
2. Gachev, G. D. (2009). *Mental'nosti narodov mira*. (p.458). Moscow.
3. Zhirmunskiy, V. M. (1948). *Vvedenie v izuchenie «Manasa»*. (p.143). Frunze.
4. Karasik, V. I. (2002). *Yazykovoy krug: lichnost', kontsepty, diskurs*. (p.447). Volgograd.
5. Krzhizhanovskiy, S. D. (2000). *Poetika zaglaviy // Sobr.sochn. v 6 t. T.1.* (p.456). Moscow.
6. (2000). *Literatura i metody ee izucheniya: sistemno-sinergicheskii podkhod*. (p.256). Moscow.
7. Ozhegov, S. I. (1990). *Tolkovyy slovar' russkogo yazyka*. (p.345). Moscow.
8. Stepanov, Y. S. (2004). *Konstanty: slovar' russkoy kul'tury*. (p.296). Moscow.
9. Tressider, D. (2000). *Slovar' simvolov*. (p.357). Moscow.
10. Khalizev, V. E. (2003). *Teoriya literatury*. (p.248). Moscow.
11. Shafranskaya, E. F. (2005). *Mifopoetika Timura Pulatova*. (p.245). Moscow.
12. Yan, V. G. (1989). *Sobranie sochineniy v IV tomakh. T. II*. (p.543). Moscow.
13. Yan, V. G. (1989). *Sobranie sochineniy v IV tomakh. T. III*. (p.525). Moscow.



## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHII (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

SOI: [1.1/TAS](#) DOI: [10.15863/TAS](#)

## International Scientific Journal Theoretical & Applied Science

p-ISSN: 2308-4944 (print) e-ISSN: 2409-0085 (online)

Year: 2019 Issue: 04 Volume: 72

Published: 30.04.2019 <http://T-Science.org>

QR – Issue



QR – Article



B.S. Yeralieva

TarSU them. M.H.Dulati  
Master of Technical Sciences

[b\\_eral@mail.ru](mailto:b_eral@mail.ru)

**SECTION 4. Computer science, computer engineering and automation.**

## PROBLEM SOLVING OF DIGITAL PROCESSING SIGNALS ON COMPUTER INSTALLATION

**Abstract:** One of the successful architectural solutions in the field of multiprocessor computing systems are reconfigurable computing systems (RVS), built on the base of programmable logic integrated circuits (FPGA). Rapid development of RVS is directly related to their ability to achieve high real performance for a wide class of labor-intensive tasks, since RVS allows you to program your computing architecture, adapting it under the structure of the current task being solved.

**Key words:** multiprocessor, digital, computing architecture.

**Language:** English

**Citation:** Yeralieva, B. S. (2019). Problem solving of digital processing signals on computer installation. *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 04 (72), 592-594.

**Soi:** <http://s-o-i.org/1.1/TAS-04-72-83> **Doi:**  <https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2019.04.72.83>

### Introduction

Rapid development of effective computer installation caused common usage of digital signal processing technology (DSP). In turn delivery of the new intensive computational problem of the DSP is motivation for developments o more powerful computer installation (CI). One of the up-to-date classes of the intensive computational problem of the DSP is wide problem class of data-flowing computing of information, which means processing of big data store in real-time mode using the same mechanisms [1], which contains such problems as different hydro and radar data-flowing processing of pictures and the others.

### Materials and Methods

For solving these classes of problems multiprocess computer installation is used (MCI), they make possible to reach high rate of productivity by means of development such direction as [1,2] – technical , which involves updating technologies of the creation element base, including by means of increasing the density of the valve-on-chip layout, leading to an increase of processor performance; - architectural - the building of optimal architectural Ci designed to solve specified classes of tasks; - algorithmic - the development of effective mathematical methods; - software - developing

programs that maximize the capabilities of CI. Successes for each of the areas of development of the MAS give new qualitative opportunities in solving already existing complex tasks, and also open up prospects for solving new, even more labor-intensive tasks, the fulfillment of which until a certain moment was impossible due to insufficient performance of computing systems. One of the successful architectural solutions in the field of multiprocessor computing systems are reconfigurable computing systems (RVS) [1, 2], built on the base of programmable logic integrated circuits (FPGA). Rapid development of RVS is directly related to their ability to achieve high real performance for a wide class of labor-intensive tasks [5, 6], since RVS allows you to program your computing architecture, adapting it under the structure of the current task being solved. An important factor affecting the real performance of the RVS is the choice of the format representing numbers. Thus, the floating-point format is advisable to use for tasks that require high accuracy of calculations and are not so critical to speed of data processing and the FPGA hardware resource used. However, in most cases, the accuracies provided by the fixed-point format is enough to solve a wide range of tasks. Such format allows increase substantially the actual system performance compared to the use of the floating point format and significantly reduce the

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India)	= 3.117	SIS (USA)	= 0.912	ICV (Poland)	= 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE)	= 0.829	ПИИЦ (Russia)	= 0.156	PIF (India)	= 1.940
GIF (Australia)	= 0.564	ESJI (KZ)	= 8.716	IBI (India)	= 4.260
JIF	= 1.500	SJIF (Morocco)	= 5.667	OAJI (USA)	= 0.350

number of FPGA hardware resources involved. This is due both to the properties of the format itself with a fixed comma, and to the possibility of using data of variable bit depth at different computational stages, which is typical of DSP tasks. Economy a hardware resource, in turn, may allow additional computational structures to be placed on the free hardware space of the FPGA, increasing the specific system performance. Specific performance in this work will be understood as the ratio of the real performance of the computing system to the expended hardware resource (the number of FPGA logic cells) required to solve the set task [9, 10]. In the tasks of stream processing, the algorithms of the fast Fourier transform (FFT) are widely used, therefore the specific and actual performance of the RVS when solving this class of problems depends on the efficiency of the implementation of the FFT algorithms. Structural implementation of FFT algorithms on RVS for data in a floating-point format does not constitute special problems due to the wide dynamic range and large bitness of the representation of numbers (usually 32 or 64 bits), but leads to low specific performance of computing systems, because of the properties format uses a large number of hardware FPGA resources. The use of the fixed-comma format with structural implementation of FFT algorithms makes it possible to achieve high specific and real performance of computing systems, but can lead to a high error of deductions and errors in the discharge grid overflow. This is due both to the narrow dynamic range of data representation in the fixed-comma format, and with changing capacity of the facts in the process of executing the algorithms. The amount of overflow errors may increase while enhancing the length of FFT and small capacity of program inputs. Elimination of overflow errors in progress arithmetic operations can be carried out in one of two ways: - applying a scaling operation (bit shift), which consists of discarding the least significant digits of the result of an arithmetic operation in order to present it with the required number of digits; - increase in digits for storing the result of an arithmetic operation. Existing methods of FFT implementation, eliminating overflow errors

using the scaling operation, do not allow to increase the specific performance of the RVS without a serious loss of calculation accuracy. applying of the way of increasing digits for storing the results of arithmetic operations at the output of each iteration of the FFT avoids errors caused by scaling and, thus, preserves the accuracy of calculations, but leads to a significant growth in the involved FPGA for FFT large dimensions, what is also undesirable. Thus, an urgent task is the development of new methods for creating parallel-conveyor programs with scalable digits, implementing FFT algorithms on the RVS and allowing for high specific performance and acceptable computational accuracy when solving DSP tasks. By scaling a category, we mean a procedure of limited (targeted) increase in the bitness of the results of operations by one category or the coordinated use of a scaling operation (bit shift) for to guarantee computation without overflows and ensure the required accuracy.

### Conclusion

RVS-on base FPGA have significant advantages compared in the MWS of traditional architectures, allowing you to customize the computational field of the system under the structure of the algorithm of the problem being solved and to provide higher real performance, close to the peak, in solving computationally labor-intensive and strongly related DSP problems in real time. Close to linear growth performance of the RVS, while increasing in the number of processors in the system, makes it possible to select the hardware for the computational tasks predictably and economically. The use of the fixed-comma data representation format for solving DSP tasks on the RVS significantly increases the specific and real system performance, but requires control on the accuracy of calculations and possible overflows of the discharge grid in conditions of limited and variable bitness of data representation at various computational stages. One of the most used algorithms for solving computationally laborious DSP problems is the FFT algorithm.

### References:

1. Guzik, V. F., Kalyaev, I. A., & Levin, I. I. (2016). *Reconfigurable computing systems: a tutorial*. under total ed. I.A. Kalyaeva (Eds.). (p.472). Taganrog: SFU. ISBN 978-5-9275-1918-7.
2. Zotov, V. Y. (2006). *Designing embedded microprocessor systems based on FPGA company Xilinx* [Text]. (p.520). Moscow: Hotline – Telecom. ISBN 5-93517-165-1.

**Impact Factor:**

<b>ISRA (India)</b>	<b>= 3.117</b>	<b>SIS (USA)</b>	<b>= 0.912</b>	<b>ICV (Poland)</b>	<b>= 6.630</b>
<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE)</b>	<b>= 0.829</b>	<b>PIHHI (Russia)</b>	<b>= 0.156</b>	<b>PIF (India)</b>	<b>= 1.940</b>
<b>GIF (Australia)</b>	<b>= 0.564</b>	<b>ESJI (KZ)</b>	<b>= 8.716</b>	<b>IBI (India)</b>	<b>= 4.260</b>
<b>JIF</b>	<b>= 1.500</b>	<b>SJIF (Morocco)</b>	<b>= 5.667</b>	<b>OAJI (USA)</b>	<b>= 0.350</b>

3. Kalyaev, I. A., & Levin, I. I. (2009). *Reconfigurable computing systems with high real performance [Electronic resource]*. Proceedings of the International Scientific Conference "Parallel Computational Technologies" (PaVT'2009). (pp.186-195). Chelyabinsk: SUSU.
4. Dordopulo, A. I., & Levin, I.I. (2008). *Software for solving computationally laborious tasks on reconfigurable computing systems [Text]*. Proceedings of the Second International Scientific Conference "Supercomputer Systems and Their Applications" (SSA'2008), October 27-29, 2008. (pp.50-54). Minsk: UIIP NAS of Belarus.
5. Lyons, R. (2006). *Digital Signal Processing [Text]* Per from English by ed. A.A. Britova. - 2 ed. (p.656). Moscow: Binom-Press. ISBN 5-9518-0149-4 (rus). 171
6. Sergienko, A. B. (2011). *Digital signal processing [Text]: studies. Manual.* - 3rd ed. (p.768). SPb.: BHV-Petersburg. ISBN 978-5-0606-9.
7. Artamonov, D. S., & Putrya, M. G. (n.d.). The method of optimization of the computational process on reconfigurable computing environments. *Information technologies and computing systems. Moscow: ISA RAS, №3*, p. 19-26.
8. Suvorova, E. A., & Sheinin, Y. E. (2003). *Designing digital systems on VHDL.* (p.576). SPb.: BHV-Petersburg. ISBN: 5-94157-189-5.
9. Tanenbaum, E., & Bos, H. (2015). *Modern operating systems.* (p.1120). SPb.: Peter. ISBN: 978-5-496-01395-6.
10. Martens-Atyushev, D. S. (n.d.). *Development of a configurable computing system for digital signal processing.* Technical Sciences - from theory to practice. Materials int. Scientific conference number 11 (47).

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIIHU (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

SOI: [1.1/TAS](#) DOI: [10.15863/TAS](#)  
**International Scientific Journal**  
**Theoretical & Applied Science**

p-ISSN: 2308-4944 (print) e-ISSN: 2409-0085 (online)

Year: 2019 Issue: 04 Volume: 72

Published: 30.04.2019 <http://T-Science.org>

QR – Issue



QR – Article



**Unona Krahmaleva**  
Candidate of Science  
Taraz State University named M.H.Dulaty

**Vyacheslav Shevtsov**  
graduate student of the 2nd course of the specialty  
"Mathematics"  
Taraz State University named M.H.Dulaty

## ANALYTICAL SOLUTION OF THE REGULAR PROBLEM OF THE STURM - LIOUVILLE PROBLEM IN MAPLE ENVIRONMENT

**Abstract:** To work with differential equations in Maple 17 has a fairly extensive set of tools. But despite this, the search for solutions to some differential equations is quite a difficult task, which requires knowledge of mathematical methods in this area. Given the fact that SCM have a developed programming language that contains procedural programming tools, it is possible to develop universal algorithms with which you can program the construction of solutions to such differential equations that will be used for specific physical problems.

**Key words:** Maple, differential equations, physical problems.

**Language:** Russian

**Citation:** Krahmaleva, U., & Shevtsov, V. (2019). Analytical solution of the regular problem of the Sturm - Liouville problem in maple environment. *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 04 (72), 595-598.

**Soi:** <http://s-o-i.org/1.1/TAS-04-72-84> **Doi:**  <https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2019.04.72.84>

### АНАЛИТИЧЕСКОЕ РЕШЕНИЕ РЕГУЛЯРНОЙ ЗАДАЧИ ШТУРМА- ЛИУВИЛЛЯ В СРЕДЕ MAPLE

**Аннотация:** Для работы с дифференциальными уравнениями в Maple 17 имеется достаточно обширный набор инструментов. Но несмотря на это поиск решения некоторых дифференциальных уравнений является достаточно сложной задачей, которая требует знания математических методов в данной области. Учитывая, тот факт, что СКМ имеют развитый язык программирования, который содержит средства процедурного программирования, имеется возможность разрабатывать универсальные алгоритмы с помощью которых можно программировать построение решения таких дифференциальных уравнений, которые будут использованы для конкретных физических задач.

**Ключевые слова:** Мапл, дифференциальные уравнения, физические задачи.

#### Introduction

Рассмотрим обыкновенное однородное дифференциальное уравнение 2-го порядка:

$$Y''(x) + \lambda Y(x) = 0, \quad a < x < b \quad (1)$$

где  $\lambda$  - параметр, принимающий любые значения.

Как известно, нахождение решения уравнения (1), которые удовлетворяют однородным линейным граничным условиям, заданные на концах интервала  $(a, b)$  является задачей Штурма - Лиувилля. Нас интересует случай, когда интервал конечен, т.е. регулярная

задача Штурма - Лиувилля, которая определена следующими граничными условиями:

$$Y(a) = 0, Y(b) = 0, \quad (2)$$

$$Y'(a) = 0, Y'(b) = 0, \quad (3)$$

где (2) – граничные условия первого рода, (3) – граничные условия второго рода.

Для нахождения решения рассматриваемой задачи необходимо определить те значения  $\lambda$ , при которых существуют нетривиальные решения, которые называются собственными функциями задачи. При этом, значения параметра

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	ПИИЦ (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

$\lambda$  называются собственными значениями задачи.

$$\begin{cases} Y''(x) + \lambda Y(x) = 0 \\ Y(a) = Y(b) = 0 \end{cases} \quad (4)$$

### Materials and Methods

Для нахождения аналитического решения задачи Штурма-Лиувилля

воспользуемся стандартными средствами Maple. Вводим значения уравнение (1):

```
restart; with(PDEtools) : with(LinearAlgebra); DU1 := diff(y(x), x, x) + lambda*y(x) = 0;
```

$$DU1 := \frac{d^2}{dx^2} y(x) + \lambda y(x) = 0$$

Находим общее решение уравнения  $DU$  :

```
Y := dsolve(DU, y(x)); dsolve(DU, y(x)); y := unapply(rhs(%), x) ;
```

$$Y := y(x) = \_C1 \sin(\sqrt{\lambda} x) + \_C2 \cos(\sqrt{\lambda} x)$$

$$y(x) = \_C1 \sin(\sqrt{\lambda} x) + \_C2 \cos(\sqrt{\lambda} x)$$

$$y := x \rightarrow \_C1 \sin(\sqrt{\lambda} x) + \_C2 \cos(\sqrt{\lambda} x)$$

Вводим граничные условия 1-го рода:

```
assume(b > a); g1 := y(a) = 0 ; g2 := y(b) = 0 ;
```

$$g1 := \_C1 \sin(\sqrt{\lambda} a) + \_C2 \cos(\sqrt{\lambda} a) = 0$$

$$g2 := \_C1 \sin(\sqrt{\lambda} b) + \_C2 \cos(\sqrt{\lambda} b) = 0$$

Сформируем систему для граничных условий, неизвестными которой являются коэффициенты  $\_C1, \_C2$  :

```
sys := {g1, g2};
```

$$sys := \{ \_C1 \sin(\sqrt{\lambda} a) + \_C2 \cos(\sqrt{\lambda} a) = 0, \_C1 \sin(\sqrt{\lambda} b) + \_C2 \cos(\sqrt{\lambda} b) = 0 \}$$

Затем составляем матрицу этой системы, используя команду **GenerateMatrix**, которая формирует матрицу из коэффициентов уравнений системы:

```
G1 := GenerateMatrix(sys, [_C1, _C2]);
```

$$G1 := \begin{bmatrix} \sin(\sqrt{\lambda} a) & 0 \\ \sin(\sqrt{\lambda} b) & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} -\_C2 \cos(\sqrt{\lambda} a) \\ -\_C2 \cos(\sqrt{\lambda} b) \end{bmatrix}$$

По синтаксису команды, из 1-го уравнения системы должны быть выбраны коэффициенты при  $\_C1, \_C2$  и записаны в первую строку матрицы  $G1$ . Аналогично, из 2-го уравнения во вторую строку. Вторая же матрица в строке, должна содержать свободные члены системы. Как видно, команда выполняется в Maple 17 своеобразно: из уравнений системы выбран коэффициент при  $\_C1$ , затем свободный член. А вторая матрица содержит неизвестные  $\_C2$  со своими коэффициентами, которые перенесены вместо свободных членов. Для формирования требуемой матрицы системы, составляем матрицу  $G2$ , затем соединяем матрицы:

```
G2 := GenerateMatrix(sys, [_C2, _C1]);
```

```
G12 := <<G1|G2>>;
```

$$G2 := \begin{bmatrix} \cos(\sqrt{\lambda} a) & 0 \\ \cos(\sqrt{\lambda} b) & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} -\_C1 \sin(\sqrt{\lambda} a) \\ -\_C1 \sin(\sqrt{\lambda} b) \end{bmatrix}$$

$$G12 := \begin{bmatrix} \sin(\sqrt{\lambda} a) & 0 & -\_C2 \cos(\sqrt{\lambda} a) & \cos(\sqrt{\lambda} a) & 0 & -\_C1 \sin(\sqrt{\lambda} a) \\ \sin(\sqrt{\lambda} b) & 0 & -\_C2 \cos(\sqrt{\lambda} b) & \cos(\sqrt{\lambda} b) & 0 & -\_C1 \sin(\sqrt{\lambda} b) \end{bmatrix}$$

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	ПИИИ (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

Первый и третий столбцы матрицы  $G12$  и составляют матрицу коэффициентов при неизвестных  $_C1, _C2$ :

```
G122 := Column(G12, 1); G123 := Column(G12, 4); G := <<G122|G123>>;
```

$$G122 := \begin{bmatrix} \sin(\sqrt{\lambda} a\sim) \\ \sin(\sqrt{\lambda} b\sim) \end{bmatrix}$$

$$G123 := \begin{bmatrix} \cos(\sqrt{\lambda} a\sim) \\ \cos(\sqrt{\lambda} b\sim) \end{bmatrix}$$

$$G := \begin{bmatrix} \sin(\sqrt{\lambda} a\sim) & \cos(\sqrt{\lambda} a\sim) \\ \sin(\sqrt{\lambda} b\sim) & \cos(\sqrt{\lambda} b\sim) \end{bmatrix}$$

Для нахождения  $\lambda$  составляем матрицу и вычисляем определитель этой матрицы:

```
del := select(has, del, lambda);
EnvAllSolutions := true :
lambda := solve(del, lambda); _EnvAllSolutions := true :
```

$$\begin{aligned} del &:= \sin(\sqrt{\lambda} a\sim - \sqrt{\lambda} b\sim) \\ \lambda &:= \frac{\pi^2 _Z1\sim^2}{(-b\sim + a\sim)^2} \end{aligned}$$

Находим  $\lambda$ :

```
combine(%); Y := unapply(select(has, %, [x]), x, k);
C1 := solve(g1, _C1);
combine(%);
simplify(subs(_C1 = combine(%%, trig), y(x)));
```

$$\begin{aligned} &_C1 \sin\left(\sqrt{\frac{\pi^2 k^2}{(-b\sim + a\sim)^2}} x\right) + _C2 \cos\left(\sqrt{\frac{\pi^2 k^2}{(-b\sim + a\sim)^2}} x\right) \\ C1 &:= \frac{-C2 \cos\left(\frac{\pi k\sim a\sim}{-b\sim + a\sim}\right)}{\sin\left(\frac{\pi k\sim a\sim}{-b\sim + a\sim}\right)} \\ &\frac{-C2 \cos\left(\frac{\pi k\sim a\sim}{-b\sim + a\sim}\right)}{\sin\left(\frac{\pi k\sim a\sim}{-b\sim + a\sim}\right)} \end{aligned}$$

```
del := combine(Determinant(G));
```

$$del := \sin(\sqrt{\lambda} a\sim - \sqrt{\lambda} b\sim) .$$

Как видим, определитель содержит тригонометрическую функцию. С помощью команды *select* выделяем нужное выражение в *del*. Для получения всех решений тригонометрического уравнения, которое представляет детерминант задаем значение глобальной переменной *\_EnvAllSolutions* равным *true*, при этом вводится целочисленная системная переменная *\_Z1* -:

$$\begin{aligned} lambda &:= \text{subs}(_Z1 = k, lambda); \\ \lambda &:= \frac{\pi^2 k^2}{(-b\sim + a\sim)^2} . \end{aligned}$$

Теперь находим собственные функции:  
*assume(k, posint) : y(x);*

$$\begin{aligned} &\frac{-C2 \sin\left(\frac{\pi a\sim k\sim - \pi k\sim x}{-b\sim + a\sim}\right)}{\sin\left(\frac{\pi k\sim a\sim}{-b\sim + a\sim}\right)} \\ Y &:= (x, k\sim) \rightarrow \sin\left(\frac{\pi a\sim k\sim - \pi k\sim x}{-b\sim + a\sim}\right) \end{aligned}$$

Используем эту же программу для решения Задачи Штурма – Лиувилля с граничными условиями 2-го рода:

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	ПИИИ (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

$$\begin{cases} Y''(x) + \lambda Y(x) = 0 \\ Y'(a) = Y'(b) = 0 \end{cases}, \quad (5)$$

тогда внесем изменения при введении граничных условий:

$$g1 := D[1](y)(a) = 0 ; g2 := D[1](y)(b) = 0 ;$$

$$g1 := -C1 \cos(\sqrt{\lambda} a) \sqrt{\lambda} - C2 \sin(\sqrt{\lambda} a) \sqrt{\lambda} = 0$$

$$g2 := -C1 \cos(\sqrt{\lambda} b) \sqrt{\lambda} - C2 \sin(\sqrt{\lambda} b) \sqrt{\lambda} = 0$$

### Conclusion

Детерминат матрицы системы имеет вид:

$$\det := \lambda \sin(\sqrt{\lambda} a - \sqrt{\lambda} b)$$

и решая его, относительно  $\lambda$ , имеем:

$$\lambda := 0, \frac{\pi^2 Z1^2}{(-b + a)^2}.$$

Разобьем значения  $\lambda$ , принимая для решения сначала первое, а затем второе значение  $\lambda$ , получим 2 решения. Для ненулевого значения  $\lambda$ , имеем:

$$\lambda := \lambda[2];$$

$$\lambda := \frac{\pi^2 Z1^2}{(-b + a)^2}$$

$$Y := (x, k) \rightarrow \cos\left(\frac{\pi a k - \pi k x}{-b + a}\right).$$

Аналогично, поступаем для  $\lambda = 0$ .  
Описываемые программы применяются для определенных значений  $a$  и  $b$ , для чего в начале программы вводятся их определенные значения.

### References:

1. Bitsadze, A. V. (1982). *Uravneniya matematicheskoy fiziki*. (p.336). Moscow: Nauka.
2. Vladimirov, V. S. (1981). *Uravneniya matematicheskoy fiziki*. (p.512) Moscow: Nauka.
3. Mikhaylov, V. P. (1983). *Differentsial'nye uravneniya s chastnymi proizvodnymi*. (p.424). Moscow: Nauka.
4. Goloskokov, D. P. (2004). *Uravneniya matematicheskoy fiziki. Reshenie zadach v sisteme Maple uchebnik dlya vuzov*. (p.539). SPb.: Piter.
5. D'yakonov, V. P. (2006). *Maple 9.5/10 v matematike, fizike i obrazovanii* Izd: Piter
6. Enns, R. H., & McGuire, G. C. (n.d.). *Nonlinear Physics With Maple for Scientists and Engineers*. ISBN 0-8176-4119-X
7. Davis, J. H. (n.d.). *Differential Equations With Maple: An Interactive Approach*. ISBN 0-8176-4181-5
8. Abell, M. L., & Braselton, J. P. (n.d.). *Differential Equations with Maple V*. ISBN 0-12-041560-7
9. Franco Vivaldi (n.d.). *Experimental Mathematics with Maple*. ISBN 1-58488-233-6
10. Greene, R. L. (n.d.). *Classical Mechanics With Maple*. ISBN 0-387-94512-1
11. Lynch, S. (n.d.). *Dynamical Systems with Applications using Maple*. ISBN 0-8176-4150-5
12. Putz, J. F. (2003). *Maple Animation*. ISBN 1-58488-378-2

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

SOI: [1.1/TAS](#) DOI: [10.15863/TAS](#)  
**International Scientific Journal**  
**Theoretical & Applied Science**

p-ISSN: 2308-4944 (print) e-ISSN: 2409-0085 (online)

Year: 2019 Issue: 04 Volume: 72

Published: 30.04.2019 <http://T-Science.org>

QR – Issue



QR – Article



**Nigora Holmatova**  
Kokand State Pedagogical Institute, Uzbekistan.  
[dokma@bk.ru](mailto:dokma@bk.ru)

## FIQRAS (ARTICLES) IN ARTISTIC PUBLICITY OF ERKIN A'ZAM

**Abstract:** *The fiqras (articles) which are entered to the collection “Ertalabki hayollar” (“The dreams in the morning”) of Erkin A’zam, are analyzed in this article. The important artistic and publicist features specific to them are illuminated in this article.*

**Key words:** *Erkin A’zam, artistic publicity, fiqra (article), social problem, moral and ethical problem.*

**Language:** *English*

**Citation:** *Holmatova, N. (2019). Fiqras (articles) in artistic publicity of Erkin A’zam. ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science, 04 (72), 599-602.*

**Soi:** <http://s-o-i.org/1.1/TAS-04-72-85> **Doi:**  <https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2019.04.72.85>

### Introduction

The novel, stories and narrations of the Uzbek people's writer, Erkin A'zam, aroused intriguing debate and observations among the literary community, as well as his artistic publicity was so alive, and it attracted the attention of many researchers. In particular, almost 140 publicistic creative works' samples of the author have been collected in the collections of “Jannat o'zi qaydadur” (“Where is the paradise”) and “Ertalabki hayollar” (“The dreams in the morning”). As soon as his “Ertalabki hayollar” (“The dreams in the morning”) book which were collected his “clear base” works which were printed in press during the next quarter century, published, a series of reviews in the press were printed [4, 37-41; 5; 3; 7; 8, 127-130; 10]. The leading features, critical spirit, their culmination of the artistic publicity of Erkin A'zam, his articles and conversations which directed to the enigmatic issues, were admitted in all of these reviews.

### Materials and Methods

In this article, we are going to give attention inscriptions and articles of Erkin Azam which are published under the name of “fiqra”, are small by their size, but their meaning are equal to the atomic power. Thus, more than 40 fiqras (articles) of the author are included in the chapter “Shap-shap degancha...” of the collection “Ertalabki hayollar” (“The dreams in the morning”). It should be separately noted that Erkin Azam wrote the fiqras (articles) fitting to the ream “Muharrir minbari” (“The editor's rostrum”) of the “Tafakkur” magazine. They are incredibly compact

by their size, but their meaning is powerful. If we say with expression of Abdulla Kahhar, they have “the power of the atom”. In particular, dozens of fiqras (articles) of author such as “Boy bo'lay desangiz...” (“If you want to be rich...”), “Inson o'zing” (you are human yourself), “Shoshmasdan shoshiling” (“Hurry up without unhurriedly”), “Uyat bo'ladi” (“It will be shame”), “Jannat qidirib” (“Looking for the paradise”) “Jonajon ukaxonlar” (“Dear brothers”), “Hoziriylar” (“To be present”), “Maniy kasha sog'inchi” (“Miss of semolina”), “Zarchopon” (“Golden chapan”) attract with devoting to important spiritual, moral, daily and social problems which exist in social-daily life. Erkin A'zam destructively strikes a blow to the things which happen for blazer in the Uzbek national life. In particular, he criticizes the traditions such as wearing chapan, making dolly-tubes which are given as the present in jubilees and weddings. The publicist wants the abolition of such unnecessary customs which occurred in our nation's life. For example, the author asks the question that what is the importance of the “Zarchopons” (“Golden chapans”) which will be given as the present for the jubilee, in our life in the article of the author “Zarchopon”. It can also be seen the frivolous, critical spirit specific to artistic creative work style of Erkin A'zam in his fiqras (articles). For instance, the writer writes: “But do not think that this links only with golden chapan. Golden chapan - is a sign of respect, our saving tradition, of course. Also, it is not all. Unfortunately, these type decorum which are like hypocrisy, are many in our national life! At this point, a lot of dissatisfied and disadvantaged dolly-tubes



## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIIHQ (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

which are sent to the Hayit holiday of bride for being famous and etc.

Surprisingly, we have come to the twenty-first centuries with such brilliant “dolly-tubes”. Is it progress or fall?

Are you fifty, or sixty? “Yelkani shaylayvering...” [1, 173.]. As we have seen, Erkin A’zam asks should we abandon such unnecessary traditions, and he try to open “the eyes” of the nation. In general, critical view, analytical analysis to the problematic situation are clearly seen in every firqa (article) of Erkin Azam. For example, the author criticizes “the myopic people who think only about today” in the article “Hoziriylar” (“To be present”). Erkin A’zam strongly criticizes “the contemporaries, who are beginning to live in the mood of today” which increased in the people of the transition period, in this firqa (article). The author concludes the article with a publicist call that “let’s live with the worries of tomorrow, do not live with only worries of today.

Also, “Uyat bo’ladi” (“It will be shame”) firqa (article) of the author is one of the articles which attracts the attention. The article begins with the recitation of the article “Uyat” (“The shame”) of our teacher, Abdulla Kahhar. Erkin A’zam does not mention the article of Abdulla Kahhar about “Uyat” (“The shame”) as only fact. This article begins with sensual sensation memories which the author felt himself at the time, when the writer personally read the text of this article by television and showed it at the first time. In particular, he writes, “There is the article titled “Uyat” (“The shame”) of our teacher, Abdulla Kahhar describes ethics as being a distinction between man and animal.

I first heard the content of the article from the word of the author on television. Then, at that time the actual social and cultural problems are not given attention, but it is true that I wonder the teacher's emphasis on a certain ethical topic, and especially when we are listening to him at every step in our childhood and youthfulness, is so great”.

Why did Erkin A’zam come back to this topic again? He applied again. The writer him self answered this question in the firqa (article). The writer emphasized that living with shame is them ost important feeling that separates man from the animal.

When we look at the author's firqas (articles) as a whole, we can see the moral, ethical, and social problems that the writer has to think. For example, the writer criticized the people who were “stone is lighter” in the “Hoziriylar” (“To be present”) in the transition period.

He wrote about the names and surnames which are still in correctly written by orthographical aspect in the Russian language in the documents, in “... Ov”, “...Ov”, “-vich”, “-vich” firqa (article). The writer sees the national identity in the name of a person. That's why the writer writes the following: “Finally, does the national self - identity begin with us, our own name, and surname of everyone of us? How can the person who knows himself, tolerate when his name is called with destructive, distorted or misplaced names? Right, there are some formalities of this work - the time, the wish need. But do you think it's a good thing to do it, and what will we tomorrow tell our descendants?!”<sup>1</sup>. “In general, the call to his contemporaries and nation is clearly shown in each firqa (article) of the writer. The artistic publicity of Erkin A’zam attracts the reader’s attention with its figurative, impressive language. Let’s take a look at the author’s firqa (article) “Namkashlik” (“Becoming moisture”). In that case, the publicist compares the wall with the someone who will take everything with him: “You know, if the foundation is not solid and the necessary precautions are not taken, the wall will moist, salted, gradually, its plaster fall rumble, consequently, one day it will ruin.

Some people look like such moisture wall. They are “moistened” by the wind of summer. Because the foundation is fragile, slow. If you say something about somebody, they immediately take it themselves, wail and begin to take action against you”<sup>2</sup>. Erkin A’zam adds even short legends and proverbs from the samples of folklore to the text of the article in order to be impressionable, pithy of the content of the firqas (articles). But these insertions are not only for writing, filling the pages. These insertions serve to increase the artistic-publicistic quantity of firqas (article). The author provides a more educated and influential of firqa (article) through giving the legend about “Ibn Arabiy” in the firqa (article) “Namkash”. Also, he also uses a folklore proverb in order to conclude his thoughts after a short exposition of legend: “Who fears sparrows, does not sow millet, if someone becomes a student to Gulxaniy and writes sayings, if someone describes the sky and the universe, about fantasy, who will write the real life? If people read such works, will not they become from another planetarium?”

Erkin A’zam criticizes “worship, believing spiritual pyrs” social illness in the firqa “O’zim o’qimaganman, lekin – zo’r!” (“I did not read it myself, but it is great!”), he tries to attract the attention of the contemporaries to the social discomforts such as Westernism, imitation, avoidance in the firqa (article) “Munosib bo’laylik” (“Become conformable”). If we look into the base of

<sup>1</sup>Аъзам Э. “...Ов”, “...ов”, “...-вич”, “-вич” / Эрталабки хаёллар. - Тошкент: Ўзбекистон, 2015. - Б. 182.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

abovementioned fiqras (articles), the author encourages us not to deviate from national ground and nationalism in every fiqras (articles). In short, the writer destructively streaks a blow to the culture as crowd, the thinking as crowd and the imitation as crowd. The writer exposes social illnesses such as double-dealing, hypocrisy in the fiqra (article) "...Biri dilda" ("...One in the Heart"), he seriously criticizes the fake ambition in the fiqra (article) "Zar yamoqlar" ("Golden patches"). It is said in this fiqra (article): "One day Pushkin said: "Glory is a golden patch which is being shown in the trousers". Does a person which has golden patch in trousers, be called a person?"

When we talk, we tell: if the country's stage and the world stage are occupied with truly creative work, intelligence, not with dishonesties in the mask of the national honors, it will be honest and eternal" [1, 205.]. In our look, artistic and publicistic ideas about serious problems, such as the crowd which is being happened in the process of globalization, collapsing of the nation, deviation from the national earth, national identity of Erkin A'zam become more and more intricate, it is embodied in the novel of "Shovqin" ("The noise") as an artistic novel, a hybrid images. Because, the writer describes masterfully the terrible tragedy of hybrid images which happened in the process of approaching of cultures, art, people with each other, integration in the novel "Shovqin" ("The noise"). As we have seen, fiqras (articles) in the creative work of Erkin Azam remained in the form of a one-page or a half-page simple publicistic commentaries. On the contrary, many global, universal problems and ideas in fiqras (articles) served as the base for creating the story, novel, narrative in the creative work of Erkin A'zam., which is a great story, novel, story.

He exposes the negative features which have increased in our contemporaries who are exposed to egoism, selfishness, and indulgence in the "Marhamatsiz tomoshabinlar" ("Ungracious viewers") fiqra (article). He criticizes the robot people who cannot think independently, in the "Farqi bor! Bor!" fiqra (article). ("It does not matter!") "This type person is called "a zombie" in a worldly term. The robot who is runned somebody, weak-willed, slave and can not think freely. They are also called mankurt.

I have a nephew, a brave young man, and a student – he studies at a famous institute. But you ask any question, his answer is the same: "It does not matter". "Are you going to institute tomorrow or your day off?" "I do anything you say. "It does not matter". "Do you want to continue your study here or go to a village when you are finishing your studies?" "It does not matter" [1, 214.]. As we have seen, Erkin A'zam efficiently uses vital facts in the text of the fiqras (articles). As you can see above, he gives fact the tragedy of those people who can not

think independently, with vital example which we see in the character of his relatives, the above mentioned fiqra (article). We conclude as follows as a result of the in-depth study of the literary-publicistic composition of the fiqras (articles) of Erkin A'zam, together with the imaginary artistic language, vital issues and arguments are given in a very compact, concise way. It is possible to understand that every fiqra (article) which the writer created, is written with compassionating about the wounds and illnesses of the period. For almost ten years the fiqras (articles) of Erkin A'zam have become a brand of "Tafakkur" magazine. But in recent years, the importance of the fiqras (articles) which are removed from the "Muharrir minbari" ("The editor's rostrum"), has been evident that the writer gives attention to the actual problems in time despite many years have last.

The vital and literary examples are given very much in the articles of Erkin A'zam. The writer showed as the sample of his life using some vital facts in the article titled "Insoniylik mezoni" ("Humanity Scale") that kind and sincere have been losing. This vital fact is given as example in the article. "Here is an example of mine. It will be twenty-one years, every time I go to my birth town, Boysun for my holiday, then I come back with a stingy surprise: "What happened? Where has mercy and charity gone to someone before?". My poet friend Usman Azim wrote poem about these thought and opinions and he concluded as the follows: "Ketib qopti Boysundan Boysun! ("Boysun left from Boysun!")"

It seems clear to the visitor. It seems that your relatives who were on friendly with each other when you came to the last time, are more composure for some reason, and that there is not close friendship between relatives and friends... Thus, it is extraordinary situation. You can not understand in spite of you think of it. You'll learn yourself how to calm down: "Hayot o'zi shudir-da!" [1, 65.]. ("That's life!")

Certainly, it is glad that new good traditions which are suitable to new period, have appeared and the old ones are getting richer in shape and content, but the episode given in this part occurs in every time of life. The writer approaches to this problem with particular way, the writer gives disappearing the people from each other, becoming reserved them in his memory with vital fact. He sees himself in front of reader's eyes, his relationships with his parents, his brothers; his relatives are shown in vital image in an associative way. Only then the author's attitude will be shown towards this social illness. The writer describes his reaction to this negative situation with literary facts. The couplet "Ketib qopti Boysundan Boysun!" ("Boysun left from Boysun!") in the poem of Usman Azim's poetry, describes reaction of the writer to the social disrespectfulness which is being criticized by a figurative image, a fictional fact. We feel tease, a critical spirit in his thought "Hayot o'zi shudir-da".

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

We see that the writer has a negative reaction to this situation and encourages the reader to think with this idea. The definiteness, honesty, fairness, and kindness specific to the personality of the writer are clearly shown in the center of all the publicistic works of the writer which the writer attitude his reactions to the social reality and the problems of it.

The writer analyzes that how level the mercy has been losing in today's or such increase of pragmatism which is built on the basis of these calculus, with many examples of concrete vital facts in this article. In particular, he writes that: "I have a friend, Shaymardon. His last name is Kudratov. No, he is not hero with you, but the other, a simple Kudratov. He often calls me and asks for my condition. He also invites me to the guest, and talks interesting conversations. I always go back to him with pleasure. Actually, I am terrified at first: "He has some trouble. One day, he will bring thick handwriting to me: "Please, you will see this my creative work and you will print it, my brother".

Well, it is not summer. There is not work for my writings. It just looks such a man. Thanks to his father. I'm glad. I wonder what's going on. Look, how level

we achieve! So, lust, accounts join to our mercy and kind. "The tobacco is yours, the fire is ours" [1. 66.].

### Conclusion

The author once again reaffirms in which level the criterion of humanity is using this vital fact in the article. The tease helps to the writer that he achieves effectively to express his attitude to the social imperfection (human dignity, self-esteem, built on the basis of calculus) which has been criticizing, by means of figurative image, tease, allegory in the part "Sizdan ugina – mendan bugina" ("The tobacco is yours, the fire is ours"). This feature is personality inherent to the nature of the writer Erkin A'zam, his poetic mindset, and his artistic creativity.

The vital facts which are listed in the article, are gradually positioned and they can not be separated from each other. The fact which is the composition of the article, and the of logical-sensitive thinking trend require one another. The publicist has clearly defined the nature of the events which have been discussing, the essence of communication and relations among them by means of methods such as analysis, synthesis, and induction, deduction in the scientific and theoretical creativity.

### References:

1. A'zam, E. (2015). *Ertalabki xayollar*. - Toshkent: O'zbekiston.
2. A'zam, E. (2007). *Jannat o'zi qaydadir*. - Toshkent: Sharq.
3. Sattorova, G. (2009, May 28). *Ruhiyat suvratlari talqini*. Ishonch.
4. Umirov, S. (2016). Tarhi toza publisitika. *Yoshlik, №7*, pp. 37-41.
5. Qulman, O. (2016, March 22). *Ezgu orzu ("Ertalabki xayollar" to'plami haqida)* / Hurriyat, p.7.
6. Qo'chqorova, M. (2011). *Badiiy so'z va ruhiyat manzaralari*. Toshkent: Muharrir.
7. Qo'chqorova, M. (2016, June 22). *Yozuvchi Erkin A'zamning "Ertalabki xayollar"iga chizgilar...* / Kitob dunyosi, p.6.
8. Qo'chqorova, M. (2016). Erkin A'zam publistikasi. *O'zbek tili va adabiyoti, №6*, pp.127-130.
9. (2014). *Erkin A'zam badiiy olami*. Toshkent: Muharrir.
10. Shofiyev, O. (2016, April 15). *Ertalabki xayollar jozibasi*. Surxon yoshlari, p.6-6.

<b>Impact Factor:</b>	<b>ISRA (India) = 3.117</b>	<b>SIS (USA) = 0.912</b>	<b>ICV (Poland) = 6.630</b>
	<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829</b>	<b>PIHII (Russia) = 0.156</b>	<b>PIF (India) = 1.940</b>
	<b>GIF (Australia) = 0.564</b>	<b>ESJI (KZ) = 8.716</b>	<b>IBI (India) = 4.260</b>
	<b>JIF = 1.500</b>	<b>SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667</b>	<b>OAJI (USA) = 0.350</b>

## Contents

	p.
63. <b>Tukhliev, I. S., &amp; Muhamadiyev, A. N.</b> Smart-tourism experience in geo information systems. ....	501-504
64. <b>Karshiev, A. B., Nabiyeva, S. S., &amp; Egamkulov, A. S.</b> Medical information systems. ....	505-508
65. <b>Norinov, M. U., Abdukodirov, B. A., Tillavoldiev, A. O., &amp; Urinov, N. T.</b> Algorithm for eliminating noise by a smooth-smooth image model. ....	509-512
66. <b>Akmalova, Z. N.</b> Diversity of modern methods in the teaching foreign language. ....	513-516
67. <b>Djurayeva, F. S.</b> Communicative method against the traditional method of teaching foreign language. ....	517-520
68. <b>Rafiddinov, S.</b> Navai and Kalandariya. ....	521-525
69. <b>Babayev, S. B.</b> Perfection of methodology of forecasting of tax revenues from physical persons: foreign experience. ....	526-531
70. <b>Mamatqulova, D. J.</b> Globalization and civilization: problems and tasks. ....	532-535
71. <b>Miltiqboyev, B.</b> The role of “cluster” method in teaching subject “National idea”. ....	536-540
72. <b>Khajieva, F. M.</b> Decoding of stylistic devices in Russian and English translations of the Uzbek novel “days gone by” by Abdulla Qadiri (stylistic correspondences and transformations). ....	541-545
73. <b>Kholikulov, A. B.</b> Bukhara emirate's farming in the XIX-XX centuries (in the case of Kashkadarya oasis stables). ....	546-549
74. <b>Tukhtabekov, K. A.</b> The system of academic degrees and post-university education in the republic of China. ....	550-553
75. <b>Usarov, U. A., &amp; Sharipova, A. B.</b> In written courses of the middle ages toponyms regarding to the history of farming and irrigation system of bottom Zarafshan oasis. ....	554-556
76. <b>Jalilova, L. J., &amp; Rajabov, A. U.</b> Comic creation means in James Thurber`s novel “the secret life of Walter Mitty”. ....	557-560
77. <b>Saloydinova, N. S.</b> The difficulty of reading and translating scientific construction of texts in the English language. ....	561-564
78. <b>Shakirov, I. R.</b> History and prospects of cooperation between Uzbekistan and Singapore. ....	565-569

<b>Impact Factor:</b>	<b>ISRA (India) = 3.117</b>	<b>SIS (USA) = 0.912</b>	<b>ICV (Poland) = 6.630</b>
	<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829</b>	<b>PIHII (Russia) = 0.156</b>	<b>PIF (India) = 1.940</b>
	<b>GIF (Australia) = 0.564</b>	<b>ESJI (KZ) = 8.716</b>	<b>IBI (India) = 4.260</b>
	<b>JIF = 1.500</b>	<b>SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667</b>	<b>OAJI (USA) = 0.350</b>

---

79.	<b>Hasanov, A. A.</b> Investment in "green" economy - a strategic way of economic development in the republic of Azerbaijan. ....	570-575
80.	<b>Konurbayev, T. A., &amp; Ussenova, S. M.</b> Methods of experimental study of the emotional condition of the teacher. ....	576-581
81.	<b>Nurmanova, D. A.</b> Text as a universal form of representation of «part from the whole». ....	582-585
82.	<b>Khaydarova, N. A.</b> Representation of the concept "horse" in the historical trilogy of V.Yan. ....	586-591
83.	<b>Yeralieva, B. S.</b> Problem solving of digital processing signals on computer installation. ....	592-594
84.	<b>Krahmaleva, U., &amp; Shevtsov, V.</b> Analytical solution of the regular problem of the Sturm - Liouville problem in maple environment. ....	595-598
85.	<b>Holmatova, N.</b> Fiqras (articles) in artistic publicity of Erkin A'zam. ....	599-602

**Impact Factor:**

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	ПИИЦ (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

**Scientific publication**

«ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science, USA» - Международный научный журнал зарегистрированный во Франции, и выходящий в электронном и печатном формате. **Препринт** журнала публикуется на сайте по мере поступления статей.

Все поданные авторами статьи в течении 1-го дня размещаются на сайте <http://T-Science.org>.

Печатный экземпляр рассылается авторам в течение 2-4 дней после 30 числа каждого месяца.

**Импакт фактор журнала**

<b>Impact Factor</b>	2013	2014	2015	2016	2017	2018	2019
Impact Factor JIF		<b>1.500</b>					
Impact Factor ISRA (India)		<b>1.344</b>				<b>3.117</b>	
Impact Factor ISI (Dubai, UAE) based on International Citation Report (ICR)	<b>0.307</b>	<b>0.829</b>					
Impact Factor GIF (Australia)	<b>0.356</b>	<b>0.453</b>	<b>0.564</b>				
Impact Factor SIS (USA)	<b>0.438</b>	<b>0.912</b>					
Impact Factor ПИИЦ (Russia)		<b>0.179</b>	<b>0.224</b>	<b>0.207</b>	<b>0.156</b>		
Impact Factor ESJI (KZ) based on Eurasian Citation Report (ECR)		<b>1.042</b>	<b>1.950</b>	<b>3.860</b>	<b>4.102</b>	<b>6.015</b>	<b>8.716</b>
Impact Factor SJIF (Morocco)		<b>2.031</b>				<b>5.667</b>	
Impact Factor ICV (Poland)		<b>6.630</b>					
Impact Factor PIF (India)		<b>1.619</b>	<b>1.940</b>				
Impact Factor IBI (India)			<b>4.260</b>				
Impact Factor OAJI (USA)						<b>0.350</b>	

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHII (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

## INDEXING METADATA OF ARTICLES IN SCIENTOMETRIC BASES:



International Scientific Indexing ISI (Dubai, UAE)  
<http://isindexing.com/isi/journaldetails.php?id=327>



Research Bible (Japan)  
<http://journalseeker.researchbib.com/?action=viewJournalDetails&issn=23084944&uid=rd1775>



PIHII (Russia)  
<http://elibrary.ru/contents.asp?issueid=1246197>



Türk eğitim indeksi

Turk Egitim Indeksi (Turkey)  
<http://www.turkegitimindeksi.com/Journals.aspx?ID=149>



DOI (USA)  
<http://www.doi.org>



Open Academic Journals Index (Russia)  
<http://oaji.net/journal-detail.html?number=679>



Japan Link Center (Japan) <https://japanlinkcenter.org>



Kudos Innovations, Ltd. (USA)  
<https://www.growkudos.com>



Cl.An. // THOMSON REUTERS, EndNote (USA)  
<https://www.myendnoteweb.com/EndNoteWeb.html>



Scientific Object Identifier (SOI)  
<http://s-o-i.org/>



Google Scholar (USA)  
[http://scholar.google.ru/scholar?q=Theoretical+science.org&btnG=&hl=ru&as\\_sdt=0%2C5](http://scholar.google.ru/scholar?q=Theoretical+science.org&btnG=&hl=ru&as_sdt=0%2C5)



Directory of abstract indexing for Journals  
<http://www.daij.org/journal-detail.php?jid=94>



CrossRef (USA)  
<http://doi.crossref.org>



Collective IP (USA)  
<https://www.collectiveip.com/>



PFTS Europe/Rebus:list (United Kingdom)  
<http://www.rebuslist.com>



Korean Federation of Science and Technology Societies (Korea)  
<http://www.kofst.or.kr>

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India)	= 3.117	SIS (USA)	= 0.912	ICV (Poland)	= 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE)	= 0.829	PIIHQ (Russia)	= 0.156	PIF (India)	= 1.940
GIF (Australia)	= 0.564	ESJI (KZ)	= 8.716	IBI (India)	= 4.260
JIF	= 1.500	SJIF (Morocco)	= 5.667	OAJI (USA)	= 0.350



AcademicKeys (Connecticut, USA)  
[http://sciences.academickeys.com/jour\\_main.php](http://sciences.academickeys.com/jour_main.php)



Cl.An. // THOMSON REUTERS, ResearcherID (USA)  
<http://www.researcherid.com/rid/N-7988-2013>



RedLink (Canada)  
<https://www.redlink.com/>



TDNet  
Library & Information Center Solutions (USA)  
<http://www.tdnet.io/>



RefME (USA & UK)  
<https://www.refme.com>



Sherpa Romeo (United Kingdom)  
<http://www.sherpa.ac.uk/romeo/search.php?source=journal&sourceid=28772>



Cl.An. // THOMSON REUTERS, ORCID (USA)  
<http://orcid.org/0000-0002-7689-4157>



Yewno (USA & UK)  
<http://yewno.com/>



Stratified Medical Ltd. (London, United Kingdom)  
<http://www.stratifiedmedical.com/>

## THE SCIENTIFIC JOURNAL IS INDEXED IN SCIENTOMETRIC BASES:



Advanced Sciences Index (Germany)  
<http://journal-index.org/>



Global Impact Factor (Australia)  
<http://globalimpactfactor.com/?type=issn&s=2308-4944&submit=Submit>



SCIENTIFIC INDEXING SERVICE (USA)  
<http://sindexs.org/JournalList.aspx?ID=202>



International Society for Research Activity (India)  
<http://www.israjif.org/single.php?did=2308-4944>



## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHC (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350



**CiteFactor**  
Academic Scientific Journals

**CiteFactor (USA) Directory Indexing of International Research Journals**

<http://www.citefactor.org/journal/index/11362/theoretical-applied-science>



**International Institute of Organized Research (India)**

<http://www.i2or.com/indexed-journals.html>



**JIFACTOR**

**JIFACTOR**

[http://www.jifactor.org/journal\\_view.php?journal\\_id=2073](http://www.jifactor.org/journal_view.php?journal_id=2073)



**Journal Index**

<http://journalindex.net/?qi=Theoretical+%26+Applied+Science>



**Eurasian Scientific Journal Index (Kazakhstan)**

<http://esjindex.org/search.php?id=1>



**Open Access JOURNALS**

**Open Access Journals**

<http://www.oajournals.info/>



**SJIF Impact Factor (Morocco)**

<http://sjifactor.inno-space.net/passport.php?id=18062>



Indian Citation Index

**Indian citation index (India)**

<http://www.indiancitationindex.com/>



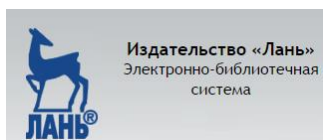
**InfoBase Index (India)**

<http://infobaseindex.com>



**Index Copernicus International (Warsaw, Poland)**

<http://journals.indexcopernicus.com/masterlist.php?q=2308-4944>



**Электронно-библиотечная система «Издательства «Лань» (Russia)**

<http://e.lanbook.com/journal/>

<b>Impact Factor:</b>	<b>ISRA (India) = 3.117</b>	<b>SIS (USA) = 0.912</b>	<b>ICV (Poland) = 6.630</b>
	<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829</b>	<b>PIHHQ (Russia) = 0.156</b>	<b>PIF (India) = 1.940</b>
	<b>GIF (Australia) = 0.564</b>	<b>ESJI (KZ) = 8.716</b>	<b>IBI (India) = 4.260</b>
	<b>JIF = 1.500</b>	<b>SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667</b>	<b>OAJI (USA) = 0.350</b>

---

<b>Impact Factor:</b>	<b>ISRA (India) = 3.117</b>	<b>SIS (USA) = 0.912</b>	<b>ICV (Poland) = 6.630</b>
	<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829</b>	<b>PIHII (Russia) = 0.156</b>	<b>PIF (India) = 1.940</b>
	<b>GIF (Australia) = 0.564</b>	<b>ESJI (KZ) = 8.716</b>	<b>IBI (India) = 4.260</b>
	<b>JIF = 1.500</b>	<b>SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667</b>	<b>OAJI (USA) = 0.350</b>

---

---

Signed in print: 30.04.2019. Size 60x84  $\frac{1}{8}$

«Theoretical & Applied Science» (USA, Sweden, KZ)  
Scientific publication, p.sh. 38.125. Edition of 90 copies.  
<http://T-Science.org> E-mail: [T-Science@mail.ru](mailto:T-Science@mail.ru)

---

Printed «Theoretical & Applied Science»